Tahitian is spoken throughout French Polynesia as the lingua franca. In spite of this, until now the only Tahitian grammars have been written either in French or with a heavily ecclesiastical aim. This book caters for the need for a general introduction to the Tahitian language written in English.

It is a comprehensive study based on modern linguistic techniques, but presented in non-technical language. By means of a series of lessons, exercises, and passages for translation, the reader becomes familiar with the basic and recurring grammatical structures used in everyday situations, while at the same time learning something of the culture and customs of the inhabitants of French Polynesia.

Both the language specialist and the traveller to the Polynesian islands will find this book an invaluable guide to the study of the Tahitian language.
Tahitian is spoken throughout French Polynesia as the lingua franca. In spite of this, until now the only Tahitian grammars have been written either in French or with a heavily ecclesiastical aim. This book caters for the need for a general introduction to the Tahitian language written in English.

It is a comprehensive study based on modern linguistic techniques, but presented in non-technical language. By means of a series of lessons, exercises, and passages for translation, the reader becomes familiar with the basic and recurring grammatical structures used in everyday situations, while at the same time learning something of the culture and customs of the inhabitants of French Polynesia.

Both the language specialist and the traveller to the Polynesian islands will find this book an invaluable guide to the study of the Tahitian language.
A New Zealander by birth, D. T. Tryon is a graduate of the University of Canterbury and the Australian National University. At present he is a Research Fellow in Linguistics at the Research School of Pacific Studies of the Australian National University.

He has spent two periods living in Tahiti while studying the language, which is a part of his wider interest in the languages of the South Pacific as a key to the interpretation of migrations into the area.

Dr Tryon has previously published grammars and dictionaries of the languages of New Caledonia and the Loyalty Islands, and is currently studying the languages of the Daly River Aborigines, Northern Territory, Australia.

This republication is part of the digitisation project being carried out by Scholarly Information Services/Library and ANU Press.

This project aims to make past scholarly works published by The Australian National University available to a global audience under its open-access policy.
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

An Introduction to the Tahitian Language of French Polynesia

D. T. Tryon

AUSTRALIAN NATIONAL UNIVERSITY PRESS
CANBERRA 1970
To Gaye
The present book—one of the first textbooks of Tahitian ever published in English—fills a serious gap in the literature on Polynesian languages, and will enable interested persons to acquire a sound practical knowledge of this important language of the Pacific. I can speak with feeling on this, having been in the position of trying, with little success, to learn Tahitian away from Tahiti while utilising the existing textbooks. Their shortcomings, especially on the phonetic level, are so great as to render this task nearly futile.

I am very pleased to see that this publication has resulted from the work carried out in the Department of Linguistics in the Research School of Pacific Studies of the Australian National University, and I welcome it as the fulfilment of a dream conceived during my first visit to Tahiti four years ago.

S. A. WURM
Professor of Linguistics
Research School of Pacific Studies
Australian National University
CONTENTS

Foreword, by S. A. Wurm vii
Introduction xiii
Lesson 1 Pronunciation 1
Consonants; vowels; vowel length; vowel sequences; glottal stop; words beginning with a vowel; the syllable; stress; elision; some common and useful phrases
Lesson 2 The Articles 8
General articles; the dual; special articles
Lesson 3 Numerals and Time 15
Cardinal numbers; usage of numerals; ordinal numbers; days of the week; months of the year; telling the time; temporal expressions
Lesson 4 The Adjective 20
Normal modifiers; changing modifiers; comparative and superlative; equality; all, every; ānā'e
Lesson 5 The Demonstrative 24
Teie; tēna; tēra; taua ... ra; te reira
Lesson 6 Possession 26
Possessive particles; pronoun possessors; common noun possessors; proper noun possessors; possessive statements
Lesson 7 The Pronoun 30
Pronouns subject; pronouns object; other object markers
Lesson 8 The Verb 32
Word order; active verbs; passive verbs
Lesson 9 The Causative Verb 41
Fa'ā- or ha'a-; tā-; causative and passive; noun + hia; dual forms of the verb; intensified verbs
Lesson 10 The Negative 46
'Aita and 'aore; 'e'ita and 'e'ore; 'e'ere; negative + roa; 'aitēā and 'aore ā; 'ore
Lesson 11 Verbal Sentence Types 49
Intransitive; transitive; dual object; attributive;
passive; passive indirect object; impersonal verbs; *vai*

**Lesson 12** Non-Verbal Sentences  
It is, there is; identificational; equational; to have  

**Lesson 13** Time and Frequency  
Time phrases; frequency phrases  

**Lesson 14** Location and Direction  
Location phrases (in, on, under, above, etc.); directionals (to, from, etc.)  

**Lesson 15** Optional Phrases  
Benefactive; accompaniment; manner  

**Lesson 16** Purpose and Cause  
Purpose (in order to, so that); cause (because)  

**Lesson 17** Imperatives  
The three degrees of imperative; Arrival in Tahiti (translation)  

**Lesson 18** The Interrogative I  
Yes?, no?; interrogative subject (who?); interrogative non-subject (whom?, which?, to whom?, whose?, by whom?); The Post Office (translation)  

**Lesson 19** The Interrogative II  
Why?; where?; when?; how?; what?; Conversation (translation)  

**Lesson 20** Dependent Sentences I  
Dependent subject; dependent non-subject; Visit to the Shops (translation)  

**Lesson 21** Dependent Sentences II  
Why; when; while, when; how; what; whether; that; since; where; Copra (translation)  

**Lesson 22** Special Verbal Forms  
Reflexive; reciprocal; emphatic pronoun; ability (can, able to); competence (know how to); attempted action (try to); The Market (translation)  

**Lesson 23** Desiderative, Necessitative, Conditional  
Desiderative (want, want to); necessitative (must, should, ought); conditional (if); Fishing (translation)  

**Lesson 24** Conjunctions  
Usage; Pearl-shell Diving (translation)  

**Further Passages for Translation**  
Tahiti  
Things to do in Tahiti  
Planting Sweet Potatoes  
The Eel's Hole  
The Fourteenth of July
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orange-picking</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Apetahi Flower</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>House-building</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishing with Stones</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Breadfruit Legend</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Lepers’ Feast Day</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key to Exercises</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key to Translations</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Tahitian Family</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tahitian-English Glossary</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English-Tahitian Glossary</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

Tahitian is spoken in the Society Islands of French Polynesia. The main islands on which it is spoken are Tahiti, Moorea, Raiatea, Tahaa, Maupiti, Huahine, and Borabora. It is also widely spoken and understood in most of the islands of the Tuamotu archipelago.

Numerous grammars of Tahitian, written almost exclusively in French, have appeared in the past. The need has been felt for an up-to-date Tahitian grammar, written in English, especially in view of the development of tourism and the large number of English-speaking visitors to these islands. Previous grammars have been based on classical European models, and have not been entirely satisfactory in showing how Tahitian functions. Others have been written with the purpose of evangelisation in mind.

The aim of the present work is to present a course in conversational Tahitian, the Tahitian heard every day in Tahiti and the surrounding islands. It is hoped that by means of this book readers will quickly and clearly grasp the structure of the Tahitian language, so unlike that of European languages, and be able to communicate easily in it.

This work does not, however, constitute a normative grammar of Tahitian which states that such and such a construction is correct, to the exclusion of other constructions often heard. Such a grammar would need to be written by the Tahitians themselves. What is represented here is an attempt to eliminate the formal and often archaic Tahitian found in theological literature, and to concentrate on the language and expression of Tahiti as used in everyday affairs.

*Conversational Tahitian* is not written for linguists alone, but for people generally who are interested in Tahiti and Tahitian. For this reason, technical terms have been avoided as far as possible.*

This study does not follow the same lines as existing grammars of Tahitian, but looks at Tahitian within the framework of Oceanic languages. Some of the traditional descriptive features have, however, been retained in the interests of clarity. The present work consists of a series of graded lessons, with exercises. Once the basic

* Specialist linguistic papers on aspects of Tahitian are, however, planned for the near future.
structures have been established, passages for translation are introduced. An attempt has been made to make these passages as relevant as possible to everyday life and events in Tahiti. Keys to the exercises and translations have been provided, together with a Tahitian-English, English-Tahitian glossary. In the key to the translations, a rather literal translation has been given so that the student may follow it more easily; this has naturally rendered the English more stilted than would have been the case had a free translation been given.

The orthography of this work is based on the traditional orthography currently in use in Tahiti, but differs from it in the following ways:

(i) long vowels are consistently marked;
(ii) the glottal stop is indicated in all occurrences;
(iii) the "elision" of traditional Tahitian orthography is not indicated (see §9).

During the preparation of this book, I have become indebted to many people and institutions. Firstly I would like to express my gratitude to the Australian National University, for making the research possible.

I wish to acknowledge my debt of gratitude to Professor S. A. Wurm, and to Drs D. C. Laycock, B. R. Finney, H. Bluhme, and N. Gunson for their advice and comment during the preparation of the manuscript.

In Tahiti, I am much indebted to the Office de la Recherche Scientifique et Technique Outre-mer, and especially to its Director, Mr H. Lavondès. I must also thank Mr Maco Tevane of Radio Tahiti for his assistance and comments, Mr Claude Robineau of O.R.S.T.O.M., and Mr and Mrs Joseph Adam of Taunoa.

My special thanks are due to my principal informant and guide, Mr François Taumihau Peu, of Papeete, for his unfailing efforts and continued encouragement and co-operation.

To the many people unnamed, but certainly not forgotten, my sincere thanks for the generous assistance, co-operation, and hospitality given to me during my stays in Tahiti.

My thanks, also, to my parents for the invaluable assistance which they gave.

It is the hope of the author that this book may be of use to English speakers interested in Tahiti and Tahitian, and that from reading it they may gain some insight into the language, daily events, and pastimes of the peoples of the Society Islands.
Lesson 1

PRONUNCIATION

Before commencing the study of Tahitian grammar, it is necessary to enumerate the sounds in Tahitian and their pronunciation. Particular attention should be paid to pronunciation, as a bad pronunciation, even with a good grammatical command of the language, can result in confusion and total lack of communication.

1. Consonants

There are eight consonants in Tahitian,* namely:

\[ f \ h \ m \ n \ p \ r \ t \ v \]

These approximate to the following sounds in English:

\[ f, \] phonetically [f], as in friend;
\[ h, \] phonetically [h], as in house; pronounced as [ç] as in German \( ich \), or [s] as in shoe when preceded by i and followed by o;
\[ m, \] phonetically [m], as in mouse;
\[ n, \] phonetically [n], as in nap;
\[ p, \] phonetically [p], as in sponge; this sound is unaspirated, (i.e. it lacks the puff of air that accompanies the p in pill or put);
\[ r, \] phonetically [ɾ], is a so-called flap sound, similar to a single tap of the English rolled r; it is sometimes trilled like a Scottish r;
\[ t, \] phonetically [t], as in stand; this sound is unaspirated, as for p, above;
\[ v, \] phonetically [v], as in vine; \( v \) is sometimes pronounced \( w \), as a free variant; it is also realised as [β], which is like an English \( v \), except that it is produced with the upper and lower lips, instead of with the upper teeth and lower lip. However, the pronunciation of \( v \) as in vine is proposed to the reader, as it will cause no confusion, nor impede communication.

In some words, \( r \) and \( n \) occur as variants. Thus:

\[ rava'i \]
\[ nava'i \]

* The glottal stop should strictly be classed as a consonant, but for pedagogical reasons it is treated separately (§§ 5 and 6).
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

roa'a
noa'a
to obtain, to be acquired

One also finds f and h as variants, as in:
pufa
puha
copra
ūfī
ūhi
ūhi
ยำ
tufa'a
tuha'a
share

When a word manifesting this phenomenon is used in the text of this book, the more common variant only is given.

2. Vowels

There are five vowels in Tahitian, as follows:
a e i o u

Their approximate English and French equivalents are:
a, phonetically [a], as in butter, or French patte, paw;
e, phonetically [e], as in French, été, summer;
i, phonetically [i], as in French ville, city,* and not unlike that in team, but shorter;
o, phonetically [o], as in French eau, water, or Scottish go, but shorter;
u, phonetically [u], as in French cou, neck, or English foot; in other words, this is a u sound made with strong lip rounding.

3. Vowel Length

In Tahitian there is a second series of vowels, which are long vowels corresponding to those in §2. They are the same in quality as those above, but are pronounced as if they were a double vowel.†

These vowels are:
ā, phonetically [aː], as in father, or French pâté, pie;
ē, phonetically [eː], as in été, summer, but longer;
ī, phonetically [iː], as in machine, but longer;
ō, phonetically [oː], as in go, or French pôle, pole;
ū, phonetically [uː], as in moo, or French cou, neck, but longer.

The long vowel will always be marked by a stroke over the vowel, as

* Note that rahi (big), 'inanahi (yesterday), and 'ananahi (tomorrow) are often pronounced rahai, 'inanahai, and 'ananahai respectively.
† In §§ 7 and 8, on the syllable and stress, a long vowel is regarded as a sequence of two identical vowels.
above, throughout the lessons that follow. Numerous pairs of words are distinguished solely by the length of the vowel. Short vowels are pronounced very short when they form a minimal contrast with a word containing a long vowel, but not otherwise, as in the following selection of examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parau</td>
<td>to speak</td>
<td>pərau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātau</td>
<td>hook</td>
<td>mātəu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marō</td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>marō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāna</td>
<td>herd</td>
<td>nāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mati</td>
<td>match</td>
<td>māti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fefē</td>
<td>twisted</td>
<td>fefē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pepe</td>
<td>butterfly</td>
<td>pēpe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i</td>
<td>by, at</td>
<td>'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'api</td>
<td>page</td>
<td>'api</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poro</td>
<td>corner</td>
<td>poro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maro</td>
<td>royal belt</td>
<td>marō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pūpū</td>
<td>group</td>
<td>pūpū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tutu</td>
<td>kind of tree</td>
<td>tutu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ua</td>
<td>past tense marker</td>
<td>'ua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Vowel Sequences

Sequences of two vowels are common in Tahitian (sometimes more than two), as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā  ae  ai ao  au</td>
<td>tapu, to cut; haere, to go; vai, to be; ao, world, day; parau, to speak;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ea  ê  ei eo  eu</td>
<td>mea, thing; 'ē, different; hei, garland; reo, language; pareu, sarong;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ia  ie  i  io  iu</td>
<td>'ia, when; 'ohie, easy; 'i, full; hio, to whistle; fiu, weary;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oae  oe  oi  ō  ou</td>
<td>hoa, friend; hoe, to paddle; hopoi, to carry; pōro, marble; hou, before;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ua  ue  ui  uo  ū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* However, ai, au, ae, and oi tend to become diphthongised.
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

pu'a', pig; ueue, to shake; nui, immense; 'uo'ou, clean; pūpū, sea-shell.
Sequences of two consonants are not found in Tahitian.

5. Glottal Stop
This sound, marked ' throughout the text, is of prime importance in the pronunciation of the Tahitian language. It consists of blocking the air-stream with the glottis. It is similar to the sound heard, for example, in the cockney pronunciation of the word "butter", where the "tt" is not sounded, but replaced by a glottal stop, thus "bu'er". In American English, a glottal stop also occurs often in words such as "cotton", which becomes "co'n".* Some Tahitian examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pu'a'</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'apo'o</td>
<td>hole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i'oa</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'ari</td>
<td>coconut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Words Beginning with a Vowel
Particular attention should be paid to words beginning with a vowel in Tahitian, as there are four possible pronunciations of the initial vowel, as follows:

(i) The vowel may be short and preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'oe</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'umara</td>
<td>sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'uri</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'amu</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) The vowel may be long and preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'āu</td>
<td>to swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ia</td>
<td>to steal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iii) The vowel may be short, not preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>I, me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atua</td>
<td>God</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(iv) The vowel may be long, not preceded by a glottal stop, as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>āo</td>
<td>world, day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āu</td>
<td>nice, good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the initial vowel is long, but not preceded by a glottal stop, it is lightly pharyngealised (pronounced with a rough breathing). When this vowel is followed immediately by a glottal stop, the rough breathing becomes very strong, as in:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i'a</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The Tahitian glottal stop differs somewhat from the cockney one in that the blockage of the air-stream is often incomplete, especially between identical vowels, producing what could be called a "glottal croak" or glottal tremulant.
Several sets of words in Tahitian are distinguished solely by the manner of articulation of the initial vowel. A selection of examples follows:

- 'au to chew
- 'āu to swim
- āu nice, good
- ā'u to hunt
- au I, me
- 'ata to laugh
- āta cloud
- 'atā difficult
- 'oi sharp, pointed
- ōi to mix
- 'o'i to sprain
- oï to almost do something
- ōi-a past tense marker
- ō'i-a to flower
- ūa a kind of crab
- ūa rain
- 'a'o the fat of a fish
- a'o to preach
- āo world, day
- 'ori to dance
- āri haere to go for a walk

7. The Syllable

The syllable in Tahitian consists of + C + N, where C equals a consonant or glottal stop, and N equals either a short vowel, a long vowel (i.e. two identical vowels), or a sequence of two different vowels. ± indicates that the consonant is optional, while + indicates that the vowel or sequence is obligatory in the syllable. Where a sequence of three vowels occurs, the first two should be taken as one syllable, except when the second vowel is long.

Examples:
- pō-ti-'i girl
- ta-mai-ti boy
- ta-'a-ta person
- 'oi-a he, she
- 'o-īa male (fish, tree)
- ma-nu bird

8. Stress

In Tahitian, the primary stress is not nearly so heavy as in English in many words, and at times it appears that no particular syllable bears
the primary stress. However, there are four stress rules which are in evidence:

(i) In words containing either a sequence of different vowels or a long vowel, the stress falls on the first vowel of the sequence, or on the long vowel.

Examples:

- tiare flower
- ráiti rice
- tia’a shoe
- pahi ship
- tamáiti boy
- tamáhine daughter

(ii) With words containing two such sequences (i.e. sequences of different or same vowels, that is, long vowels), then the stress falls on the first of the sequences in the word.

Examples:

- fēiā group
- tamároa boy
- farāoa bread

(iii) With words not containing long vowels or sequences of vowels, the stress falls on the penultimate syllable.

Examples:

- fāre house
- má’o shark
- ta’ātia person
- ‘ohipa work

(iv) With compound words, usually polysyllabic, each part of the compound takes its own stress.

Examples:

- pua’a-niho goat
- pua’a-hóro-fenua horse

9. Elision

When a word ends in the same vowel as the initial vowel of the following word, the identical vowels form a sequence (i.e. a long vowel). For example, ‘ia a’ahiāta (when it is dawn) is pronounced as if it were ‘iā’ ahiāta.

In some Tahitian orthographies, this process has been called elision and marked with an apostrophe, but in this work such elisions will not be marked as they are quite regular.
When a short vowel and a long vowel come together in different words, the short vowel is elided; thus noa ātu (unless) becomes noātu.

10. Some Common and Useful Phrases

Some useful phrases and common idioms in Tahitian are as follows:

'Ia ora na 'oe! Hi there!
A haere mai! Come here!
Haere mai. Welcome.
Parahi. Good-bye.
Ara'ūā'e. See you later.
'E aha te huru? How are you?
'E aha tō 'oe huru? How are you?
Maita'i roa. Very good.
Manava, maeva! Welcome (to dignitaries).
Manuai! Cheers! Good luck!
'E hoa! Friend!
'E homā! Friends!
'E. Yes.
'Aita. No.
Atira. That's enough.
'E āra! Be careful!
Nō te aha? Why?
'Eiaha 'e rū! There's no hurry; wait!
'E rū! Wait a minute!
'Aita 'e pe'ape'a. It doesn't matter.
'O vai iera? Who is that?
Māmū! Be quiet! Silence!
Maniamia! Stop the noise!
A haere ātu! Go away!
Fa'atea! Scram!
'E aha? What?
'Ehia moni? How much is this?
'E mea māmā. It is cheap.
'Aita tā'u 'e moni. I have no money.
Tei hea te hotera? Where is the hotel?
Tei hea te fare rata? Where is the Post Office?
'I tete nei mahāna* Yesterday, tomorrow.
'Inanahi; 'ananahe Thank you.
Maurūru 'ia 'oe.

* Throughout this book the second vowel of mahāna has been marked long. Many speakers, however, pronounce the vowel short in this word.
Lesson 2

THE ARTICLES

Vocabulary:

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\textit{te manu} & the bird & \textit{te pua'a} & the pig \\
\textit{te 'ava'ava} & the cigarette & \textit{te vahie} & the wood \\
\textit{te fare} & the house & \textit{te taro} & the taro \\
\textit{na metua} & the parents & \textit{te mai'a} & the banana \\
\textit{te 'uri} & the dog & \textit{te vi} & the mango \\
\textit{te pape} & the water & \textit{te mamoe} & the sheep \\
\textit{te i'a} & the fish & \textit{te feti'i} & the family \\
\textit{te mā'a} & the food & \textit{te ari'i} & the king \\
\textit{te 'uru} & the breadfruit & \textit{te moa} & the fowl \\
\textit{te tiare} & the flower & \textit{te 'i'ita} & the pawpaw \\
\textit{te fē'i} & the red banana & \textit{te ūpo'o} & the head \\
\textit{te ha'ari} & the coconut & \textit{te farāoa} & the bread \\
\textit{te fa'a'apu} & the plantation & \textit{te raiti} & the rice \\
\textit{te pāha} & the wild boar & \textit{te moni} & the money \\
\textit{te reo} & the language & \textit{te farāne} & the franc \\
\textit{te pahi} & the steamer & \textit{hanere} & hundred \\
\textit{te poti} & the boat & \textit{hitu} & seven \\
\textit{te hoa} & the friend & \textit{pae} & five \\
\textit{te maeha'a} & the twin & \textit{toru} & three \\
\textit{te tia'a} & the shoe & \textit{maita'i} & good \\
\textit{te tamāroa} & the boy & \textit{'ite} & to see \\
\textit{te tamari'i} & the child & \textit{reva} & to leave \\
\textit{te ta'ata} & the person & \textit{na rima} & the hands \\
\textit{te parahira'a} & the chair & & 
\end{tabular}

The articles in Tahitian will be explained in three sections, general articles, the dual, and special articles.
11. General Articles

**TABLE OF ARTICLES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Dual</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definite</td>
<td><em>te</em></td>
<td><em>te mau</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td><em>te hō'e</em></td>
<td><em>te mau, te hō'e mau</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>te tahi</em></td>
<td><em>(te tahi mau)</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative</td>
<td><em>'o</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>'e</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Te.* The article *te* is the definite article, meaning “the”. In conversation it is also used as an indefinite article, meaning “a, an”. Examples:

- *te fare* the house
- *te ta'a'ata* the man
- *te 'uru* the breadfruit

*Te mau.* The plural of *te* is *te mau*. Thus we have:

- *te mau fare* the houses
- *te mau ta'a'ata* the men
- *te mau 'uri* the dogs

(No plural sign is added to the noun itself.) Note that *te* alone may be used to indicate a plural if the idea of plurality is not stressed, for example:

- *te ta'a'ata* the people

*Te hō'e.* The indefinite article, meaning “a, an”, is indicated by *te hō'e*, thus:

- *te hō'e pahi* a ship
- *te hō'e fare* a house

*Te hō'e mau.* A limited plural is indicated by *te hō'e mau*. Example:

- *te hō'e mau tamari'i* some children

Compare this with the unrestricted plural: *te mau tamari'i* children, the children.

*Te tahi.* This article is commonly used in a very general sense, and means “a, another, a different one”. Thus:

- *te tahi fare* another house
- *te tahi ta'a'ata* another man
**Te tahi mau.** The plural of *te tahi* is *te tahi mau*, or optionally *vetahi mau*. Thus:

*te tahi mau fare*  
*vetahi mau fare*  

the other houses

'O. The article *'o* has three functions:

(i) It is a kind of demonstrative article, meaning "it is", with proper nouns and pronouns. Thus:

*'o Tahiti*  
*it is Tahiti*  

*'o Teri'ī*  
*it is Terii*  

*'o vau*  
*it is I*  

*'o rātou*  
*it is they*

(ii) It is also used with proper nouns used as subject. Thus:

*'ua reva ātu *'o Peu*  
*Peu left*

(iii) *'O* is also used as kind of emphatic pronoun marker with *'oe* (= you sing.), but not with other pronouns. Example:

*'e ta'ata maita'i *'o *'oe*  
*you are a good man*

For explanation of this sentence structure, see §73.

'E. This article has two functions:

(i) *'E* corresponds to *'o* and is used with all common nouns with the same demonstrative force. Thus:

*'e ta'ata*  
*it is a person*  

*'e vahine*  
*it is a woman*  

*'e mau vahine*  
*they are women*

But:  

*'o te ta'ata*  
*it is the man*  

*'o te vahine*  
*it is the woman*

(ii) *'E* is also a vocative, used when addressing people; the person addressed may also be followed by *ē* when further emphasis is sought. Examples:

*'E Teri'ī tāne!*  
*Oh! Mr Terii!*

*'E hoa!*  
*Friend!*  

*'E Teri'ī ē!*  
*Oh! Terii!*

12. The Dual

In Tahitian, unlike most European languages, there exists a series of articles used to indicate duality, such as two birds, two men, the hands, the feet. The dual is also used to indicate a restricted plural, up to five or six and certainly no more than ten.

The three dual articles used in conversational Tahitian are:

*na, nau, tau na.*
Na. This article is used in two ways:

(i) It is the article used with two persons or objects which are normally found in pairs. Thus:

- na rima
  the hands
- na metua
  the parents
- na ta'ata
  the men

(ii) It is also used with numbers up to ten, with reference to persons, if the actual number is specified. Thus:

\[ 'ua\ 'ite\ au\ 'i\ na\ ta'ata\ to'ohitu \]
I saw seven men

However, na may be used without restriction of number when the subjects may be considered to form a group. Examples:

- na moni 'e pae hanere farâne. The sum of five hundred francs
  \[ 'ua\ 'ite\ au\ 'i\ na\ ta'ata\ 'e\ toru\ hanere \]
  I saw three hundred men

The usage of the numerals themselves is discussed in §16.

Nau. This article is used under the same conditions as for na, when the subject in question is near the speaker, and sets up an opposition with tau na. Thus:

- nau tamari'i
  the youths
- nau fare
  the houses
- nau manu
  the birds
- a hi'o na 'i têra nau tia'a
  look at these shoes
- nau moni 'e pae hanere farâne
  500 francs

Tau na. One uses this article normally when the subject is not near the speaker. Thus:

- (e) tau na ta'ata
  the men
- (e) tau na feti'a
  the stars
- tau na tumu 'anani
  the orange trees
- tau na fa'a'apu taro
  the taro fields
- tau na maeha'a
  the twins

13. Special Articles

(a) Indication of Sex. In Tahitian, gender is not indicated with nouns, as it is in European languages. A number of words exist to specify sex where required, as follows:

Tâne and Vahine. Tâne is used with kinship terms* and proper nouns denoting human beings to indicate the masculine; vahine is used to indicate the feminine. These correspond to the English Mr and Mrs. Examples:

- Teri'i tâne
  Mr Terii
- Teri'i vahine
  Mrs Terii

* The full list of kinship terms is given in §146.
te metua tāne the father
the mother
te metua vahine

'Otāne and 'ovahine. These indicate masculine and feminine with reference to trees or plants, fish, and shellfish, but only when there is a reason to specify the sex. Thus:

'i 'īta 'ōtāne male pawpaw
'i 'īta 'ovahine female pawpaw

Ōni and ufa. These indicate masculine and feminine respectively, with reference to animals. Thus:

moa ōni a rooster
moa ufa a hen
'uri ōni a dog
'uri ufa a bitch

Pa'e and maia'a. These two terms are also applied to animals to indicate male and female, but are used to indicate that they are adult animals capable of reproduction or having already reproduced. Thus:

te pua'a pa'e the boar
te pua'a maia'a the sow

(b) The Young of Animals. Fanau'a and pinia. Fanau'a is used to indicate the young of any animal except a sheep, where pinia is used. Thus:

te pua'a fanau'a the piglet
te 'uri fanau'a the puppy

But: te pinia niamoe the lamb

(c) Quantity. In Tahitian there is a series of words indicating a group, and as these occur frequently in conversation they will be explained immediately.

Hui is used respectfully of a group of esteemed people. Thus:

te hui mana the authorities
te hui ari'i the royal family
te hui ra'atira the population

Mā follows the noun and indicates a family group. Examples:

Teri'i mā the Teriis
Peu mā the Peu family

Nana indicates a flock or herd. Thus:

te hō'e nana i'a a shoal of fish

But: te hō'e nana mamoe a flock of sheep
Taura indicates a race or breed of men or animals. Thus:

- \textit{te hō'e taura 'uri} a breed of dogs
- \textit{te hō'e taura ta'ata} a race of men

Ruru indicates a bundle or collection of something which is tied with a rope or liana. Thus:

- \textit{te ruru vahie} the bundle of wood
- \textit{te ruru ma'a} the bundle of food

'Amui indicates a bundle of goods, tied, but containing all the same articles in the one bundle. Thus:

- \textit{te 'amui taro} the package of taros
- \textit{te 'amui 'uru} the package of breadfruit

'Atā is used almost synonymously with \textit{ruru}. Example:

- \textit{te 'atā 'uru} the collection of breadfruit

Pe'etā indicates a bunch still attached to a branch. Thus:

- \textit{te pe'etā 'uru} the bunch of breadfruit
- \textit{te pe'etā ha'ari} the bunch of coconuts

Atari indicates a bunch of fruit picked from the tree. Examples:

- \textit{te atari fe'i} the bunch of red bananas
- \textit{te atari mai'a} the bunch of bananas

Pupā indicates a bunch, usually of smaller fruits. Thus:

- \textit{te pupā vine} the bunch of grapes
- \textit{te pupā vi} the bunch of mangoes

Pu'e indicates a collection of men, animals, or foods. Thus:

- \textit{te pu'e ta'ata} the troop of men
- \textit{te pu'e i'a} the collection (catch) of fish
- \textit{te pu'e tiare} the heap of flowers

Feiā indicates an ensemble, an entire group of people engaged in some activity. Thus:

- \textit{te feiā fa'a'apu} the farmers
- \textit{te feiā tā'i'a} the fishermen
- \textit{te feiā rātere} the tourists

Ma'a indicates a small quantity when applied especially to food. Thus:

- \textit{ma'a raiti} a little rice
- \textit{ma'a farāoa} a little bread
- \textit{ma'a pape} a little water
14. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
Lesson 3

NUMERALS AND TIME

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pohe</td>
<td>to die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma'i</td>
<td>to be sick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ehia?</td>
<td>how many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to'ohia?</td>
<td>how many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i roto</td>
<td>in, inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te piha</td>
<td>the room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roa'a</td>
<td>to catch, obtain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pō</td>
<td>the night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haere</td>
<td>to go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ho'i</td>
<td>to return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tai'a</td>
<td>to fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te hepetoma</td>
<td>the week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'ava'e</td>
<td>the month, moon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te matahiti</td>
<td>the year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te hora</td>
<td>the time, hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te miniti</td>
<td>the minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te va'a</td>
<td>the canoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pōti'i</td>
<td>the girl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. Cardinal Numbers

The cardinal numbers in Tahitian are as follows:

1 hō'e, tahi
2 piti
3 toru
4 maha
5 pae
6 ōno
7 hitu
8 va'u
9 iva
10 hō'e 'ahuru
11 hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e
12 hō'e 'ahuru ma piti
13 hō'e 'ahuru ma toru
14 hō'e 'ahuru ma maha
15 hō'e 'ahuru ma pae
16 hō'e 'ahuru ma ōno
17 hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu
18 hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u
19 hō'e 'ahuru ma iva
20 piti 'ahuru
21 piti 'ahuru ma hō'e
30 toru 'ahuru
40 maha 'ahuru
50 pae 'ahuru
60 ōno 'ahuru
100 hō'e hanere
101 hō'e hanere ma hō'e
1000 hō'e tauatini

Tauatini may also indicate multitudes. Example:

'ua tauatini e 'ua tauatini te ta'ata
there were thousands and thousands of people

16. Usage of Numerals

The usage of the numerals will be discussed in enumerations; as subject; and as object.
(a) Enumerations. In enumerations of persons and objects alike, the particle *e precedes the numeral in all instances, except for numerals between ten and nineteen, as follows:

- *e piti ta'ata  
  there are two persons
- *e hitu va'a  
  there are seven canoes
- *e toru 'ahuru va'a  
  there are thirty canoes
- *e toru 'ahuru ta'ata  
  there are thirty persons

But: hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu va'a  
  there are seventeen canoes
hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu ta'ata  
  there are seventeen persons

With numbers less than ten, the restricted plural or dual articles, tau na, na, and nau, are frequently used, as in:

- *e piti tau na ta'ata  
  there are two persons
- *e hitu na va'a  
  there are seven canoes
- *e hitu tau na va'a  
  there are seven canoes

Or: *e na va'a 'e hitu
  there are seven canoes
*e na ta'ata 'e maha  
  there are four persons

These enumerations are most frequently used in response to the question, “how many?”, rendered in Tahitian by to'ohia? or 'ehia?

To'ohia? is used formally to ask how many, of persons. If this interrogative is used, then to'o- must precede the numeral in the reply, if the number is less than ten, as in:

To'ohia ta'ata 'i roto 'i tēra piha?
How many persons are in that room?
To'omaha.

Four.

If the number is greater than ten, then the rules explained above apply.

'Ehia? is used formally to ask how many, of things.
In conversational Tahitian, however, 'ehia? is used of persons and things alike. Thus:

'Ehia ta'ata 'i roto 'i teie piha?
How many persons are in this room?
'E pae [hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e, 'e toru 'ahuru].
Five [eleven, thirty].

'Ehia i'a tā 'oe 'i roa'a 'inanahi?
How many fish did you catch yesterday?
'E pae [hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e, 'e toru 'ahuru].
Five [eleven, thirty].

(b) As Subject. When the subject of the sentence is qualified by a numeral, the numeral may either precede or follow the noun to which it refers. Examples:
'Ua ho'i mai 'e toru tau na ta'ata.
Three people came back.
'Ua ho'i mai 'e pae hanere ta'ata.
Five hundred men came back.
'Ua ho'i mai tā'u 'e toru na 'uri.
My three dogs came back.
Or: 'Ua ho'i mai na ta'ata 'e toru.
Three people came back.
'Ua ho'i mai tā'u na 'uri 'e toru.
My three dogs came back.

(c) As Object. When the object of the verb is qualified by a numeral, the numeral is preceded by the particle 'e, as above, with the exception of numbers from ten to nineteen. Examples:
'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata 'e toru.
I saw three persons.
'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu.
I saw seventeen persons.
'Ua 'ite au 'i na ta'ata 'e pae hanere.
I saw five hundred men.

17. Ordinal Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a tahi</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a piti</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a toru</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A may be replaced by te with all numerals except tahi without any change in meaning. Thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te piti</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matamua</td>
<td>the first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te piti 'ō</td>
<td>the second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te toru 'ō</td>
<td>the third</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second, third, etc., thing is conveyed in Tahitian by te plus numeral, followed by 'ō plus the noun in question, with the exception of “the first”, which is rendered by matamua following the noun.

Examples:

Te toru 'ō te pō 'ua ho'i mai vau.
The third night I returned.

Te piti 'ō te pō 'ua haere vau 'e tā'i'a.
The second night I went fishing.

Te pō matamua 'ua haere vau 'e tā'i'a.
The first night I went fishing.

The number of times an action is performed is indicated by the cardinal number preceded by ta'i-. Thus:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ta'i piti</td>
<td>twice</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
18. Days of the Week

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Day</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
<td>Monire</td>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>Mahana Piti</td>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
<td>Mahana Toru</td>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>Mahana Maha</td>
<td>Thursday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friday</td>
<td>Faraire</td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturday</td>
<td>Mahana Pae</td>
<td>Saturday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. Months of the Year

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Month</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>January</td>
<td>Tenuare</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>February</td>
<td>Fepuare</td>
<td>February</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>March</td>
<td>Māti</td>
<td>March</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>Eperera</td>
<td>April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>Mē</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>June</td>
<td>Tiumu</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20. Telling the Time

'E aha te hora?
Hora ha?
'Ua hora piti
'E hora piti
'E hora 'ahuru ma hō'e.
'Ua and 'e may be used one for the other in conversational Tahitian.

'Ua hora hitu e te āfa. It is half-past seven.
'E hora piti e te āfa. It is half-past two.

Minutes to the Hour. There are two methods of indicating minutes to the hour.

(i) 'E hitu miniti toe 'e hora piti ai. It is 1.53.
' E piti miniti toe 'e hora pae ai. It is 4.58.

(ii) 'E hitu miniti toe 'e tae ātu ai 'i te hora piti. It is 1.53.
'E piti miniti toe 'e tae ātu ai 'i te hora pae. It is 4.58.

The first method is more frequent in conversation, the second being more formal.

Minutes past the Hour. In the same way, there are two methods of indicating minutes past the hour.

(i) 'E hora piti ma'iri hō'e 'ahuru miniti. It is 2.10.
'E hora pae ma'iri 'e piti miniti. It is 5.02.

(ii) 'E hō'e 'ahuru miniti 'i ma'iri nō te hora piti. It is 2.10.
'E piti miniti 'i ma'iri nō te hora pae. It is 5.02.

21. Temporal Expressions

'i teie nei mahāna today
'ananahi tomorrow
'inanahi yesterday
'inanahi ātu the day before yesterday
'ananahi ātu the day after tomorrow
'i teie po'ipo'i this morning
'i napō last night
'ananahi 'ia pō tomorrow night
a napō tomorrow night
te pō night, evening

22. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'E toru tau na ta'ata. 2. Na 'uri 'e toru. 3. 'E toru na i'a. 4. 'E piti 'ahuru ta'ata. 5. 'E na ta'ata to'opiti. 6. Te pae 'ō te pō. 7. 'Ehia i'a tēra? 8. 'E ēno. 9. 'Te ōno 'o te mau pōiti'i. 10. 'Ua hora 'ahuru ma piti. 11. 'E hora toru ma'iri hō'e 'ahuru miniti. 12. 'E hora hitu e te āfa. 13. Te ēno nō Māti. 14. 'E piti miniti toe 'e hora pae ai. 15. 'I te hepetoma 'i mua.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. Three men. 2. Four dogs. 3. How many men are there? 4. There are two men. 5. The sixth night. 6. It is half-past two. 7. It is six minutes to three. 8. It is nine minutes past four. 9. Twenty-six men. 10. The fourth of December. 11. The eleventh of May. 12. Next year. 13. The first of April. 14. Ten minutes to six. 15. Sixty coconuts.
Lesson 4

THE ADJECTIVE

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>词</th>
<th>英文</th>
<th>含义</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nehehe</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>全部</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purotu</td>
<td>handsome</td>
<td>全部</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roa</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>一个，一起</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poto</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>女孩</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ino</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>事情</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maita'i</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>力量</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rahia</td>
<td>big</td>
<td>国王</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ite</td>
<td>wise</td>
<td>女王</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iti</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>智慧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>au</td>
<td>lovely</td>
<td>技巧</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haviti</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>美丽的独木舟</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maru</td>
<td>calm, gentle, soft</td>
<td>身体</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no'ano'a</td>
<td>perfumed</td>
<td>声音，语言</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ato'a</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>头发 (头)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa'ato'a</td>
<td>all</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23. Normal Modifiers

The adjective always follows the noun that it qualifies. Examples:

- `te hō'e fare nehehe` a beautiful house
- `te pōti'i purotu` the beautiful girl
- `te mau pōti'i purotu` the beautiful girls

When a numeral and an adjective occur describing the same noun, the adjective normally precedes the numeral. Thus:

- `te mau pōti'i purotu 'e iva` the nine beautiful girls

In an enumeration, the numeral precedes the noun. Thus:

- `'e iva mau pōti'i purotu` there are nine beautiful girls

When two adjectives modify the same noun, the second adjective normally becomes a noun, and is joined to the first by `e`. Examples:

- `tō 'oe rouru roa e te haviti` your beautiful long hair
- `te tiare no'ano'a e te haviti` the beautiful fragrant flower
However, if the first adjective is either rahī, "big", or iti, "small", then the second adjective follows the first without any conjunction. Thus:

\[ tō 'oe reo iti marū \]

your sweet little voice

24. Changing Modifiers

A few adjectives in Tahitian take reduplicative forms in the dual and plural, as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>roa (long)</td>
<td>roroa</td>
<td>roaroa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poto (short)</td>
<td>popoto</td>
<td>potopoto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ino (bad)</td>
<td>'i'ino</td>
<td>'i'ino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maita'i (good)</td>
<td>maita'i</td>
<td>maitata'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rahī (big)</td>
<td>rahī</td>
<td>rarahi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Note that maita'i and rahī do not take a reduplicative form in the dual.) Examples:

\[ te ta'ata 'ino \]

the bad man

\[ te mau ta'ata 'i'ino \]

the bad men

Roaroa and potopoto are also used as emphatic forms, meaning "very long" and "very short".

25. The Comparative and Superlative

Rahī translates the English "very". Thus:

\[ te hō'e ta'ata 'ite rahī \]

a very wise man

Roa also translates "very", and is more widely used than rahī. Thus:

\[ te 'uri maita'i roa \]

the very good dog

Ā'e is used to convey the comparative degree. Thus:

\[ te ta'ata poto \]

the short man

\[ te ta'ata poto ā'e \]

the shorter man

\[ te ta'ata poto roa ā'e \]

the shortest man

When a comparison with another person or object is made, the following three constructions are used:

(i) \[ 'e mea \begin{bmatrix} \text{rahī} \\ \text{iti} \end{bmatrix} \tilde{a}'e \ldots 'i \]

Examples:

\[ 'E mea rahī ā'e te pahi 'i te poti. \]

The steamer is bigger than the boat.

\[ 'E mea rahī ā'e vau 'ia 'oe. \]

I am bigger than you.

\[ 'E mea iti ā'e tā'u moni 'i tā 'oe. \]

My money is less than yours.
Note that *iti* translates "less", and does not apply to physical size in comparisons. When "smaller in stature" is meant, then *hu'a* replaces *iti*, as in:

'E mea *hu'a* ā'e 'o *Moana* 'ia 'oe.
Moana is smaller than you.

(ii) 'e \[rahi\] \[iti\] \ldots 'i

Example:
'E *rahi* tō'u 'ite 'i tō 'oe.
My knowledge is greater than yours.

(iii) \[ 'e \[ 'ua \] hau \ldots 'i

Example:
'E hau tō 'oe puai 'i tō'u.
You are stronger than me.

26. Equality

When sameness is expressed, there are three possible constructions:

(i) 'ua faito noa \ldots 'i (it is equal)

Example:
'Ua faito noa te *rahi* ō te hapaina hinano 'i te hapaina *manuia*.
The Hinano glass is the same size as the Manuia glass.

(ii) hō'e ā \ldots e (it is one, same)

Example:
Hō'e ā tō te ari'i maramarama e tō te ari'i vahine.
The king is as intelligent as the queen.
(Lit. is one the king's intelligence and the queen's)

(iii) 'e āu \ldots 'i

Example:
'E āu tō te *tamaiti* vitiviti ō tō te metua tāne.
The son is as skilful as the father.
(Lit. is equal the son's skill to that of the father)

A parallel construction, 'e āu \ldots mai, is used to translate "like, as". Example:
'E āu 'oe mai te mimi.
You are like a cat.
27. All, Every

In Tahitian there are four words corresponding to "all", which are used in the following three ways:

(i) 'Ato'a is placed directly after noun. Examples:
   - te mau ta'ata 'ato'a  all the men
   - te mau mea 'ato'a  all the things

However, if 'ato'a precedes the noun, it takes on the same meaning as when it follows the verb, namely "also". Example:
   - 'e tanā 'ato'a afata tauiha'a  and also his parcel

(ii) Pa'ato'a and ta'ato'a signify "all together", and may follow either the verb or the noun. Examples:
   - te mau ta'ata pa'ato'a  all the men
   - te haere pa'ato'a ātura rātou  they all went
   - te mau 'uri ta'ato'a  all the dogs

Pa'ato'a is normally used with animate subjects, while ta'ato'a is used with either animate or inanimate subjects.

(iii) Pauroa is almost synonymous with pa'ato'a and ta'ato'a, but with stronger emphasis on "together". Example:
   - 'I te reira taimē 'e horo pauroa te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aua.
   Then all the fish rush into the enclosure.

28. Āna'e

When āna'e follows the noun or pronoun, it is a modifier signifying "alone, only". Examples:
   - 'oia āna'e  he alone
   - iātou āna'e  we (pl.) alone

When āna'e follows the verb, it has an adverbial function, signifying "together". Example:
   - 'E haere āna'e tātou!  Let us all go together!

29. Exercise

   (a) Translate into English:
   1. Na rima nehenehe. 2. Te mau 'uri nehenehe. 3. Te mau va'a roaroa.
   4. Te 'uri maita'i roa. 5. 'E piti 'uri maita'i. 6. 'E hitu mau fare haviti. 7. Te ta'ata poto ā'e. 8. Te mau ta'ata 'i'inō. 9. 'E mea rahe ā'e te pua'a 'i te 'urī. 10. 'E mea hu'a ā'e te fare 'o Peu 'i tō 'oe.

   (b) Translate into Tahitian:
   1. The beautiful house. 2. The beautiful houses. 3. The good dog.
   4. There are a few long outrigger canoes. 5. The best dog. 6. The very good dog. 7. There are eight bad men. 8. The dog is as big as the pig. 9. The dog is smaller than the pig. 10. The pig is bigger than the dog.
Lesson 5

THE DEMONSTRATIVE

In Tahitian there are four principal demonstrative words, teie, tēna, tēra and tauta... ra. These normally precede the word they modify, with the exception of the special demonstrative sentence, which will be explained later.

30. **Teie**, this (near the speaker, in space and time). Examples:
   - teie fare this house
   - teie ta'ata this man
   - teie fare nehenehe this beautiful house

In the plural:
   - teie mau fare these houses
   - teie mau ta'ata these men
   - teie na rima these hands
   - teie mau ta'ata maitata'i 'e ōno these six good men

31. **Tēna**, that (near the person addressed, in space and time). Examples:
   - tēna ta'ata that man
   - tēna mau ta'ata 'i'ino those bad men
   - tēna pōti'i nehenehe that beautiful girl

It should be noted that teie may become eie, and tēna become ēna, but only in the plural. These forms, however, are not very current in conversational Tahitian.

32. **Tēra**, that (not near the speakers, in space and time). Examples:
   - tēra ta'ata 'ino that bad man
   - tēra mau 'uri those dogs
   - tēra tau na ta'ata those men (few)
   - tēra vahine that woman

33. **Tauta... ra**, used with approximately the same meaning as tēra. Examples:
   - tauta pōti'i ra that girl
   - tauta mau pōti'i ra those girls
34. *Te reira,* renders “that which has been already mentioned in the conversation or previously referred to”. Examples:

- *'i te reira taime* at that time
- *'i te reira fa’a* in that valley

35. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
10. *Teie ta'ata poto ā'e.*

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. This beautiful house. 2. These beautiful dogs. 3. These lovely hands. 4. That big dog. 5. Those long outriggers. 6. These few big men. 7. This small boy. 8. Those four good dogs. 9. That small cat. 10. Those beautiful girls.
Lesson 6

POSSSESSION

Vocabulary:
- *te hoa* the friend
- *te 'ahu* the dress, clothes
- *te 'upe'a* the net
- *te pōti'i* the girl
- *te hape* the mistake
- *te tia'a* the shoes
- *te feti'a* the star
- *te tipī* the knife
- *te ra'i* the sky
- *te vi* the mango
- *te 'apo'o* the hole
- *te 'avae* the leg
- *te 'iore* the rat
- *te afata* the box
- *te 'ohipa* the work
- *te ro'i* the bed
- *te tāmuta fare* the carpenter
- *te puta* the book
- *te tūmu rā'au* the tree
- *te rata* the letter
- *te 'ama'a* the branch
- *te vāti* the watch
- *te fa'a'apu* the plantation
- *te 'amura'amā'a* the table
- *te lore* to extend

36. Possessive Particles

When an item is possessed in Tahitian, it must belong to one of two classes, the first taking *tō, ō, nō*, and the second taking *tā, ā, nā*. Tahitian, then, has two noun classes for purposes of possession.

*Tō, ō, nō*. This series of possessive particles is used:
(i) when there is an absolute and intimate relationship between possessor and possessed;
(ii) with all parts of the body;
(iii) with anything that forms part of a whole;
(iv) with anything that emanates from an animate or inanimate object;
(v) with anything which shelters or protects or is of great use to someone.

*Tā, ā, nā*. This series is used to mark acquired possession without any idea of intimate or absolute relationship.

37. Pronoun Possessors

- *tō'u, tā'u* my
- *tō 'oe, tā 'oe* your
POSSESSION

Tōna, tāna
To māua, tā māua
Tō tāua, tā tāua
Tō 'oru'a, tā 'oru'a
To rāua, tā rāua
To mātou, tā mātou
Tō tātou, tā tātou
Tō 'outou, tā 'outou
Tō rātou, tā rātou

his, her
our (dual exclusive)
our (dl inclusive)
your (dl)
their (dl)
our (pl. exc.)
our (pl. inc.)
your (pl.)
their (pl.)

Note: “exclusive” excludes the person addressed; “inclusive” includes the person addressed.

Plural:

Tō 'u mau,
Tō 'oe mau,
Tā 'u mau,
Tā 'oe mau, etc.

Examples:

Tō 'u upo'o
Tō 'oe fare
Tō 'u rima
Tō 'u va'a
Tō rātou metua
Tō 'outou hoa
Tō 'outou mau hoa
Tō 'oe mau fare
Tā 'u 'uri
Tā 'oe 'upe'a
Tō 'oe hape

But:

Tā 'u vahine
Tā 'u parau

To 'oe and tā 'oe, “your”, become to when the idea of possession is not stressed. Examples:

A toro mai na 'i to rima. Give me your hand.
Teie to tamahine. Here is your daughter.

Ta'u and tana* may be used instead of tō 'u and tōna when possession is not stressed. Example:

'Ua toro mai ra 'i tana rima.
He held out his hand.

38. Common Noun Possessors

With common noun possessors, 'ō, 'ā, nō, nā, tō, and tā are the possessive particles.

* Note that the vowels are pronounced short.
There are two possible constructions:

(i) noun + \([\tilde{o}, \tilde{a}, n\tilde{a}] + \text{possessor}\)

Examples:

- te feti'a ʻo te ra'i - the stars of the sky
- te 'apō'o ʻo te 'iore - the rat's hole
- te 'uri 'a te tavana - the chief's dog
- te 'ōhipa 'a te tāmata fare - the carpenter's work

Note: nō, nā may replace ʻo, ʻā. Example:

- te feti'a nō te ra'i - the stars of the sky

Nō, nā seem to indicate a deeper sense of possession than ʻo, ʻā, but many Tahitians employ one for the other without any such distinction.

(ii) \([\tilde{t}\tilde{o}] + \text{te possessor + noun}\)

Examples:

- tō te tumu rā'au 'ama'a - the branch of the tree
- tō te ra'i feti'a - the stars of the sky
- tā te tavana 'uri - the chief's dog
- tā te tāmata fare 'ōhipa - the carpenter's work

This construction is more elegant and formal than the first one, although both are used in current conversation.

39. Proper Noun Possessors

With proper noun possessors there are two possible constructions, the first being more current than the second.

(i) noun + \([\tilde{o}, \tilde{a}] + \text{possessor}\)

Examples:

- te fa'a'apu ʻā Peu - Peu's plantation
- te ʻūpo'o ʻo Peu - Peu's head

(ii) \([\tilde{t}\tilde{o}] + \text{possessor + noun}\)

Examples:

- tō Peu ʻūpo'o - Peu's head
- tā Peu fa'a'apu - Peu's plantation

40. Possessive Statements

This construction, which will be commented on at length later, represents a complete utterance, whereas the constructions in §§37,
38, and 39 do not. The construction meaning A belongs to B, for example, consists of:

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
\text{no} \\
\text{nä}
\end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix}
\text{pronoun} \\
\text{common noun} \\
\text{proper noun}
\end{bmatrix}
\]

Examples:

- Nā'ū teie 'uri. This is my dog.
- Nō'ū teie fare. This is my house.
- Nō 'oe tēra fare. That is your house.
- Nō te pōi'i tēra 'ahu. That is the girl's dress.
- Nōna tēra fare. That is his house.
- Nō Peu tēra ti'a. Those are Peu's shoes.
- Nä Peu tēra vahine. That is Peu's wife.

41. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. My dogs. 2. His head. 3. Their (pl.) boats. 4. My six knives. 5. Their (pl.) beautiful clothes. 6. The head of the fish. 7. The branch of the mango tree. 8. The man's work. 9. Terii's head. 10. Peu's leg. 11. That is my letter. 12. Those are his boxes. 13. This is Terii's book. 14. This is my watch. 15. This is your (pl.) table.
Lesson 7

THE PRONOUN

42. Pronouns Subject

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>au, vau</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oe</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oia, 'ona</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāua</td>
<td>we (dl inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māua</td>
<td>we (dl exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'orua</td>
<td>you (dl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rāua</td>
<td>they (dl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tātou</td>
<td>we (pl. inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mātou</td>
<td>we (pl. exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'outou</td>
<td>you (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rātou*</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are two forms of the first person singular pronoun, au and vau. Au is used after words ending in -e or -i, while vau is used elsewhere. Examples:

'e ta'iri au  I shall hit
'e horo vau   I shall run

In conversational Tahitian, however, vau may replace au at any time.

There are also two forms of the third person singular pronoun, 'oia and 'ona. 'Oia is the usual pronoun, and 'ona is mostly used only if the subject has already been mentioned in the conversation, and is known to both speakers. 'Ona has a demonstrative force which 'oia lacks.

43. Pronouns Object

Since we will be learning in the next lesson how verbs work and how to make sentences, the direct object forms of the pronouns are given here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'ia'u</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ia 'oe</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'iāna</td>
<td>him, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ia tāua</td>
<td>us (dl inc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Vera also, meaning "those about whom one has spoken". Not much used in conversation.
THE PRONOUN

'ia māua        us (dl exc.)
'ia 'ōrua        you (dl)
'ia rāua        them (dl)
'ia tātou        us (pl. inc.)
'ia mātou        us (pl. exc.)
'ia 'outou      you (pl.)
'ia rātou        them (pl.)

Examples:
'ua ta'iri au 'ia 'oe  I hit you  (Lit. hit I you)
'ua 'ite au 'ia rātou  I saw them
'ua here 'oia 'ia'u  she loves me

44. Other Object Markers

It is convenient to give the direct object forms for common nouns and proper nouns immediately, as they will be used in Lesson 8, and are absolutely essential.

(a) Proper Nouns. When a proper noun is the direct object of a verb, it must be preceded by 'ia in the same way as a pronoun. Examples:
'ua hohoni te 'uri 'ia Peu  the dog bit Peu  (Lit. bit the dog Peu)
'ua 'ite au 'ia Teri'i  I saw Terii

(b) Common Nouns. When a common noun is the direct object of a verb, it must be preceded by 'i followed by the normal subject articles as seen above. Examples:
'Ua tāpū te ta'ata 'i te tumu 'uru.  The man cut down the breadfruit tree.
(Lit. cut the man the breadfruit tree)
'Ua tāpū te ta'ata 'i te mau tumu ha'ari.  The man cut down the coconut trees.
Lesson 8

THE VERB

Vocabulary:

- *haere* to go
- *tāmā'a* to eat
- *'āu* to swim
- *ta'o'otō* to sleep
- *maniania* to make a noise
- *ōti* to finish
- *tāpū* to cut
- *horo'a* to give
- *tupa'i* to kill
- *mā'iti* to elect
- *ūa* to rain
- *ho'honi* to bite
- *'ia* to steal
- *pa'imi, 'imi* to look for
- *fati* to break
- *parari* to break, smash
- *tamu* to plant
- *pure* to pray
- *'ite* to see, know
- *hi'o* to look at
- *fa'ari'i* to receive
- *tae* to arrive
- *te mātete* the market
- *te vahie* the wood
- *te tavana* the chief
- *te fā'ūpo'o* the hat
- *te 'ia* the name
- *te miti* the sea
- *te mata'i* the wind
- *te 'iore* the rat
- *āni* to ask
- *pahono* to answer
- *ta'i* to cry
- *tauturū* to help
- *ha'api'i* to learn
- *ho'o mai* to buy
- *hina'aro* to like, want
- *tāpe'a* to stop
- *inu* to drink
- *horo* to run
- *tunu* to cook
- *fa'aro'o* to hear
- *rave* to do, make, take
- *'amu* to eat
- *parau* to speak
- *pohe* to die
- *te hapaina* the glass
- *te 'ofa'i* the stone
- *te tao'a* the gift
- *te ha'ari* the coconut
- *te 'ifī* the yam
- *te 'umara* the sweet potato
- *te pia* the beer
- *te pere'o'o uira* the car
- *te titeti* the ticket
- *te manureva* the plane
- *te piha* the copra
- *te moni* the money
- *te 'oire* the city

45. Word Order

Before discussing the verb in Tahitian and its tenses, it should be
pointed out that the word order in the sentence is different from many European languages.

Normal word order = verb + subject + object

46. Active Verbs

(a) Tenses. Tahitian tenses do not correspond to those of European languages, a fact to which students of Tahitian should pay particular attention.

The tenses are as follows:

(i) \( te + \text{verb} + \text{nei} + \text{subject} \)

This form indicates an immediate future or a present continuous tense. It translates "in the act of", with overtones of proximity to the speaker. The table of verb forms is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{au} )</td>
<td>I am eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{oe} )</td>
<td>you are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{oia} )</td>
<td>he/she is eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{tatau} )</td>
<td>we (dl inc.) are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{maua} )</td>
<td>we (dl exc.) are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{oru} )</td>
<td>you two are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{ratau} )</td>
<td>they two are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{tutou} )</td>
<td>we (pl. inc.) are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{matou} )</td>
<td>we (pl. exc.) are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{'outou} )</td>
<td>you (pl.) are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{ratou} )</td>
<td>they are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{te vahine} )</td>
<td>the woman is eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( te \text{tama'a nei } \text{'o Teri'i} )</td>
<td>Teri is eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the action is not thought of as taking place in close proximity to the speaker, then \( \text{nei} \) is replaced by \( \text{maira} \). Example:

\( \text{Te 'amu ma} \text{ira raua 'i te 'uru}. \)

They two are eating breadfruit.

(ii) \( te + \text{verb} + \text{ra} + \text{subject} \)

This verbal construction indicates "was in the act of" and "has been in the act of doing something for some time", with overtones of distance from the speaker. It approximates to the European imperfect tense, which, however, lacks the second Tahitian meaning. The table of verb forms is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{te 'au ra vau} )</td>
<td>I was swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{te 'au ra 'oe} )</td>
<td>you were swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{te 'au ra 'oia} )</td>
<td>he/she was swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{te 'au ra tatau} )</td>
<td>we (dl inc.) were swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{te 'au ra maua} )</td>
<td>we (dl exc.) were swimming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
34 CONVERSATIONAL TAHIOTAN

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{te 'au ra 'ōrua} & \quad \text{you two were swimming} \\
\text{te 'au ra rāua} & \quad \text{they two were swimming} \\
\text{te 'au ra tātou} & \quad \text{we (pl. inc.) were swimming} \\
\text{te 'au ra mātou} & \quad \text{we (pl. exc.) were swimming} \\
\text{te 'au ra 'outou} & \quad \text{you (pl.) were swimming} \\
\text{te 'au ra rātou} & \quad \text{they were swimming} \\
\text{te ta'ōto ra te 'uri} & \quad \text{the dog was sleeping} \\
\text{te ta'ōto ra 'o Teri'i} & \quad \text{Terii was sleeping}
\end{align*}
\]

(This may also mean "Terii is still asleep and has been for some time").

(iii) 'ua + verb + subject

This construction indicates both a past action and a present state, that is to say, the action has been completed while the result of the action is at present being felt. In Tahitian conversation this is the construction most commonly used to indicate any past tense. The table of verb forms is as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{'ua tāpū vau 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{I cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū 'oe 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{you cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū 'oia 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{he/she cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū tāua 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{we (dl inc.) cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū māua 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{we (dl exc.) cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū 'ōrua 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{you two cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū rāua 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{they two cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū tātou 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{we (pl. inc.) cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū mātou 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{we (pl. exc.) cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū 'outou 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{you (pl.) cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū rātou 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{they cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū te vahine 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{the woman cut the wood} \\
\text{'ua tāpū 'o Teri'i 'i te vahie} & \quad \text{Terii cut the wood}
\end{align*}
\]

(iv) 'i + verb + na + subject

This construction indicates the idea of a recently completed action. It is not used as frequently in conversation as the form with 'ua. The table of forms is as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{'i haere na vau 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{I went to the market} \\
\text{'i haere na 'oe 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{you went to the market} \\
\text{'i haere na 'oia 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{he/she went to the market} \\
\text{'i haere na tāua 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{we (dl inc.) went to the market} \\
\text{'i haere na māua 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{we (dl exc.) went to the market} \\
\text{'i haere na 'ōrua 'i te mātete} & \quad \text{you two went to the market}
\end{align*}
\]

* The 'i... na form is, however, used when consequence is expressed; cf. §88.
The verb

The construction indicates a very recent past tense, "to have just done something". The form with ra indicates rather "I had just ...."

The following is the table of forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei vau 'i te vahie</td>
<td>I have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei 'oe 'i te vahie</td>
<td>you have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei 'oia 'i te vahie</td>
<td>he/she has just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei tāua 'i te vahie</td>
<td>we (dl inc.) have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei māua 'i te vahie</td>
<td>we (dl exc.) have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei 'oru'a 'i te vahie</td>
<td>you two have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei rāua 'i te vahie</td>
<td>they two have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei tātou 'i te vahie</td>
<td>we (pl. inc.) have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei mātou 'i te vahie</td>
<td>we (pl. exc.) have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei 'outou 'i te vahie</td>
<td>you (pl.) have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei rätou 'i te vahie</td>
<td>they have just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei ta'ata 'i te vahie</td>
<td>the man has just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'i tāpū iho nei 'o Teri' 'i te vahie</td>
<td>Terii has just cut the wood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(e) 'e mea maoro + nominalised verb. This is a non-verbal sentence type, conveying the distant past tense in Tahitian. Examples:

'E mea maoro 'i teie nei to 'u haerera'a 'i Mo'orea.
I went to Moorea long ago.
(Lit. it is long now my going to Moorea)

'E mea maoro te horo'ara'a hia te tao'a 'i te tavana.
The gift was given to the chief long ago.

Further reference to this structure is made in §73.

(vi) 'ua oti + possessive adjective + noun + 'i te + verb.

This is a special construction used to indicate completed action.

Examples:

'Ua oti tā'u vahie 'i te tāpū.
I have finished cutting the wood.
(Lit. is finished my wood the cutting)

Pau replaces oti to indicate "finished", when the verb is concerned with eating. Thus:

'Ua pau tā te vahine 'ina'i pua'atoro 'i te 'amu.
The woman has finished eating the beef.
(viii) 'ua mātau + subject + 'i te + verb

Habitual action, indicated by mātau, to be used to, to be accustomed to, is expressed by the above construction. Examples:

'Ua mātau vau 'i te haere 'e ti'i 'i te 'anani.
I am used to going to pick oranges.
(Lit. I am used to the going and pick oranges)

'Ua mātau vau 'i te rave 'i te 'ohipa.
I am used to working.

(ix) 'e + verb + subject

This construction is used to indicate any future tense, and may be set out as follows:

'e haere au 'i te 'oire I shall go to town
'e haere 'oe 'i te 'oire you will go to town
'e haere 'oia 'i te 'oire he/she will go to town
'e haere tāua 'i te 'oire we (dl inc.) shall go to town
'e haere māua 'i te 'oire we (dl exc.) shall go to town
'e haere 'ōrua 'i te 'oire you two will go to town
'e haere rāua 'i te 'oire they two will go to town
'e haere tātou 'i te 'oire we (pl. inc.) shall go to town
'e haere rātou 'i te 'oire we (pl. exc.) shall go to town
'e haere rātou 'i te 'oire you (pl.) will go to town
'e haere rātou 'i te 'oire they will go to town
'e tupa'i te ta'ata 'i te hō'e pua'a the man will kill a pig
'e tupa'i 'o Teri'i 'i te hō'e pua'a Terii will kill a pig

If emphasis is sought, the subject may precede the verb. Thus:

'Ananahi vau 'e haere ai 'i te mātete.
Tomorrow I shall go to the market.

The directional, ai, is explained in §81(d), and may be ignored for purposes of this lesson.

(x) mai + verb + roa + subject

This is the construction used to indicate the frustrative form of the verb, "almost, nearly". Examples:

mai pohe roa 'oia he nearly died
mai fati roa tō'u 'avae I nearly broke my leg
mai hohoni roa te 'uri 'ia'u the dog almost bit me

(b) Special Verb Fillers. In European languages, the verb slot in the sentence is usually filled by what is known as a verb. In Tahitian, as we have just seen above, this is the case also in the majority of cases. However, it is not uncommon for the verb slot to be filled by a part of speech other than a verb in the Tahitian sentence.
In Tahitian, the verb slot in the sentence may also be filled by a noun, an adjective, or an interrogative. Examples will make the point clear:

'Ua mata'i 'i teie nei.
It is blowing now.
(Lit. it winds now)

'E 'ava'e tātou 'i Maupiti.
We will spend a month on Maupiti.
(Lit. will month we on Maupiti)

'Ua tapati au 'i Pape'ete.
I spent Sunday in Papeete.

'Ua haumi te fenua.
The ground is wet.

'Ua maoro 'oia 'i tāna 'ohipa.
He is late for work.

Te aha ra tērā vahine?
What is that woman doing?

(c) Nouns Formed from Verbs. In Tahitian, verbs expressing movement or state may become abstract nouns when preceded by the article te. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mana'o</td>
<td>te mana'o</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tā'oto</td>
<td>te tā'oto</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mata'u</td>
<td>te mata'u</td>
<td>fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ora</td>
<td>te ora</td>
<td>life</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

More commonly, the nominalising suffix -ra'a converts verbs into nouns, almost without exception. In this case, the resulting noun form is participial in sense; that is, the noun becomes an action noun. The principle will become clear when the following examples are considered:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pure</td>
<td>te purera'a</td>
<td>the prayer, praying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmā'a</td>
<td>te tāmā'ara'a</td>
<td>the feast, feasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoe</td>
<td>te hoera'a</td>
<td>the rowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tae</td>
<td>te taera'a</td>
<td>the arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hapono</td>
<td>te haponora'a</td>
<td>the sending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'āu</td>
<td>te 'aura'a</td>
<td>the swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamani</td>
<td>te hamanira'a</td>
<td>the making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pafa'i</td>
<td>te pafa'ira'a</td>
<td>the gathering</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

47. Passive Verbs

The passive in Tahitian will be treated in three sections.

(i) verb + hia + subject + object + agent
The passive form of the verb consists in placing *hia* after the verb stem. Examples:

'Ua hohoni hia 'oia 'e te 'uri. He was bitten by the dog.

'Ua 'ta hia tōna tāūpo'o. His hat was stolen.

'I ta'iri hia na vau. I was whipped.

'E ta'iri hia vau. I shall be whipped.

*Hia* has been considered best kept apart from the verb stem and not joined as a suffix, as adverbs may be placed between the stem and *hia* to describe manner. This construction will be explained in §85. *Hia* is replaced by -*a* to indicate a recent past passive. Examples:

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{rave} & \text{to take} \\
\text{ravea} & \text{taken (recent)} \\
\text{rave hia} & \text{taken (general)}
\end{array}
\]

'Ua ravea te tāūpo'o 'e 'o Teri'i.
The hat was taken by Terii.

At this point it should be noted that the agentive article in Tahitian has two forms, 'i for inanimate agents and 'e for animate agents. Examples:

'Ua hohoni hia 'oia 'e te ma'ō.
He was bitten by a shark.

'Ua horo'a hia te tao'a 'e te tamūroa iti.
The gift was given by the small boy.

But: 'E haere au 'e ta'iri 'i te 'uri 'i te 'ama'a rā'au.
I shall go and hit the dog with a stick.

With pronoun agents, the forms are as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{'e au} & \text{by me} \\
\text{'e oe} & \text{by you} \\
\text{'e ana} & \text{by him} \\
\text{'e tāua} & \text{by us (dl inc.)} \\
\text{'e māua} & \text{by us (dl exc.)} \\
\text{'e 'ōrua} & \text{by you (dl)}
\end{array}
\]

Example:

'Ua tupa'i hia te 'uri 'e ana.
The dog was hit by him.

(ii) na + agent + verb + subject

This is the construction used when the emphasis rests on the agent, rather than on the action. Examples:

Nā te tavana 'i taparahi ha'apohe te ma'ō.†

* Except when the fi-al syllable of the verb is -hi, or sometimes -i, when the passive marker is -*a*; e.g. *vavahi* (to split), *vavahia* (split).

† 'I, the sign of the object, is often omitted in the past tense with this construction.
The verb remains in the active form in this construction. When this emphatic construction is used, 'i indicates all past tense, while 'e indicates future and present tense.

(iii) verbs without hia

Certain verbs in Tahitian may not take the passive marker hia. They are as follows:

- rava'i to be sufficient
- mā'e to be lifted
- nava'i to be raised
- noa'a to be obtained
- mara'a to be able
- roa'a to be able
- ti'a to be able
- ta'a to be certain
- nehenehe to be able
- mo'e to be forgotten
- hemo to be surpassed
- rē to be victorious

The following sentences illustrate their usage. It will be observed that these verbs are unlike those seen so far in that they are mainly impersonal. Examples:

'Ua nava'i te mā'a.
There is enough food.

'Ua noa'a tā tātou pia.
We have got some beer.

'Ua tā'a 'ia'u 'i te fa'a'ahoro 'i te pere'o'o-ui'a.
I know how to drive a car.

'Ua mo'e 'ia'u te titeti manureva.
I have forgotten my plane-ticket.

'Ua mā'e 'ia'u pute puha.
I was able to lift my sack of copra.

'Ua mara'a te moni 'o te puha.
The price of copra has risen.

'E ti'a 'ia'u 'ia tauturu 'ia 'oe.
I can help you.

'E nehenehe tā'u 'e tauturu 'ia 'oe.
I can help you.

'Ua hemo tō Teri'i va'a 'i tō Marama.
Terii's boat has passed Marama's.

'Ua rē 'ia Moana.
Moana has won.

It is not necessary to study part (iii) of this section intensively at this stage. After Lesson 19 it will be clearer. It is better for the moment to practise using the passive forms given in parts (i) and (ii).
48. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'Ua tāmā'a vau. 2. 'Ua hina'aro 'oia 'i te hō'e afata. 3. 'E ta'i rātou. 4. Te haere nei 'ōrua 'i te 'oire. 5. Te horo'a ra 'oia 'i te tao'a. 6. Te inu ra rātou 'i te pia. 7. 'I tupa'i na te ta'ata 'i te hō'e pua'a. 8. Te hi'o ra te mau vahine 'i te miti. 9. 'E 'amu te ta'ata 'i te vi. 10. Te horo nei te mau tamāroa. 11. 'Ua tupa'i hia te honu 'e te mau feiā tai'a. 12. 'Ua hohoni hia te ta'ata 'e te ma'o. 13. 'E tupa'i au 'i te 'uri 'i te 'ama'a rā'au. 14. 'Ua mā'iti hia 'oia 'ei mero nō te Apo'ora'a Rahi. 15. Nā'u 'i tūnu 'i te ūfi. 16. Nā te pōti'i ra 'i tānu 'i te tiare. 17. Nā 'outou 'e tāpū 'i te vahie. 18. Te tānu hia nei te hō'e tūnu ha'ari. 19. 'Ua 'amu hia te 'iore 'e te 'uri. 20. 'Ua tupa'i hia te 'uri 'e ana.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. I am eating a mango. 2. He was swimming yesterday. 3. My hat was stolen yesterday. 4. The girl was looked for by the boy. 5. I shall cut the wood tomorrow. 6. We two (inc.) shall swim. 7. They (pl.) were eating mangoes. 8. The dog bit my leg. 9. The chief died yesterday. 10. Yesterday I bought four books. 11. I like his dog. 12. The girl is looking at the sea. 13. The dog is asleep. 14. He went to the city. 15. You stole my book.
Lesson 9

THE CAUSATIVE VERB

49. Fa' a- or Ha' a-

In Tahitian there is a verb form, the causative, which is employed very frequently in conversation. The causative form means “to cause to be done”, “to have something done”. The prefixes used to form the causative are fa' a- or ha' a-.* With a smaller number of verbs, listed at the end of this section, either fa' a- or ha' a- may be used as causative markers; but in the vast majority of verbs these prefixes are not interchangeable, and the correct marker must be learnt in each case, as indicated in the glossary. Examples of the causative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Causative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tupu</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>fa' atupu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ite</td>
<td>to know</td>
<td>fa' a'ite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta'i</td>
<td>to cry</td>
<td>fa' ata'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maita'i</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>ha' amaita'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ino</td>
<td>bad</td>
<td>fa' a'ino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ahu</td>
<td>clothes</td>
<td>fa' a'ahu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nehenehe</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>fa' anehenehe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As was pointed out in §46(xi), there are really no such parts of speech as “verb”, “noun”, “adjective” in Tahitian, each part of speech being determined solely by the slot it fills and the function it performs in the sentence. It would therefore be better to speak of a “base” than of a “part of speech”. It can be seen from the above that “verbs”, “nouns”, and “adjectives” may be used to form a causative verb form. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Base</th>
<th>Causative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tae</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
<td>fa'atae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Ua fa'atae</td>
<td>'oia 'i te mau pu'a'atoro. He imported cattle.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nehenehe</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>fa'anehenehe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'E fa'anehenehe rātou 'i te piha. They are going to clean the room.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* With causative verbs, there are two primary stresses, one on the prefix and one on the verb stem, as indicated above.
The following causative forms may take either ha'a- or fa'a-*(all other verbs must always take the prefix prescribed in the glossary).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ha'a prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ha'apihā</td>
<td>to cause to boil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apo'i</td>
<td>to cover up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apoto</td>
<td>to shorten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apuai</td>
<td>to exert strength</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apu'e</td>
<td>to gather together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apupu</td>
<td>to class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apurara</td>
<td>to scatter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a fatata</td>
<td>to bring near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a ha'amā</td>
<td>to make ashamed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'amaahu</td>
<td>to be patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'amatara'u</td>
<td>to terrify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'arapu</td>
<td>to stir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'a fa'sau</td>
<td>to debase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'a fefe</td>
<td>to bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'afifi</td>
<td>to entangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'afirifiri</td>
<td>to curl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'aiu</td>
<td>to bore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amaha</td>
<td>to discover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amana</td>
<td>to authorise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amani'i</td>
<td>to spill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amoe</td>
<td>to forget, lose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fa'a prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ha'apa'apa'a</td>
<td>to roast, grill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'aputa</td>
<td>to pierce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'aputu</td>
<td>to gather together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a fa'aro</td>
<td>to straighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a'atī</td>
<td>to close, accompany</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'afaito</td>
<td>to weigh, make equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'afarerei</td>
<td>to introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'afariu</td>
<td>to convert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'ama</td>
<td>to make level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amoro</td>
<td>to delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amarari</td>
<td>to disperse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amarama-rama</td>
<td>to enlighten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amatara</td>
<td>to untie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amau</td>
<td>to establish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amau'īa</td>
<td>to waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'ama'ue</td>
<td>to make fly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amau'uii</td>
<td>to inflict pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amaurūru</td>
<td>to thank, please</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amemenene</td>
<td>to make round</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'ami'omi'o</td>
<td>to crumple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apapi</td>
<td>to level, assure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'ape'ape'a</td>
<td>to annoy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. Ta-

Ta- is another prefix forming the causative, but with the meaning “to put something to use”. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Upp</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ūpo'o</td>
<td>head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tihota</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paru</td>
<td>bait</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ta prefix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tūpo'o</td>
<td>to put on one's head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tātihota</td>
<td>to sugar something</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāparu</td>
<td>to beg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

51. Causative and Passive

In §47(iii) we saw that certain verb roots are already passive in sense and cannot take the passive formative hia. There is another short list of verbs which can take the passive formative hia, but only after the causative prefixes have been applied. This is because they are basically passive in meaning. Examining the list will make this clearer:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fāti</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fāti</td>
<td>to be broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oti</td>
<td>to be finished</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* The more common form only is listed here.
### THE CAUSATIVE VERB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tongan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to break</td>
<td>'ofati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to become untied</td>
<td>matara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to untie</td>
<td>ha'amatara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be held fast</td>
<td>mau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hold, learn thoroughly</td>
<td>tāmāu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be wasted</td>
<td>maū'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to waste</td>
<td>ha'amā'u'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be forgotten</td>
<td>mo'e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to lose</td>
<td>ha'amo'e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coconut trees are broken.  
I broke the branches.  
The branches have been broken.  
The shops are open.  
He untied the knot in the rope.  
The door is ajar.  
The rope has been well tied.  
Heifara has learnt her song well.  
The song has been learnt.  
It is a waste of time.  
He has wasted his time.  
Time has been wasted.  
I have forgotten.  
The whale has submerged again.  
The old legends are forgotten.  
The boat has been finished.  
The work is finished.  
The prayer has ended.  
I am sure.  
You have explained.  
The time has been set.  
The water is used up.  
He drank all the wine.  
The food has been consumed.  
He is dead.  
He put out the light.  
The light has been put out.
'Ua riro 'oia 'ei tavana. He has become the mayor.
'Ua fa'ariro 'oia 'i tōna pere'o'o. He has sold his car.
'Ua fa'ariro hia 'oia 'ei ta'ata He has been made a French
Farani.
citizen.

52. Noun + hia

In Tahitian any common noun may become a passive impersonal
verb, simply by the addition of hia to the noun itself. Examples:
ta'ata man, person ta'atahia to become populous
mā'a food mā'ahia to become fruitful
mahāna sun mahānahia to become sunny

Thus: 'E'ita 'e ta'atahia 'i te 'oire 'ananahī.
There will be nobody in town tomorrow.

53. Dual Forms of the Verb

When a movement or action is performed by two persons together,
the form of some verbs is subject to partial reduplication, usually of
the first syllable. Examples:

horo to run hohoro to run (two together)
haere to go hahaere to go (two together)
reva to leave rereva to leave (two together)
parau to converse paraparau to converse (two
together)
ta'oto to sleep ta'o'oto to sleep (two together)

54. Intensified Verbs

When an action or movement is repeated several times or very often,
the form of several verbs is subject to complete or almost complete
reduplication. Thus:

parau to converse parauparau to talk a lot
hi'o to look at hi'ohi'o to stare at
hoe to row hoehoe to row here and there
pātia to prick, spear pātiatia to prick several times
rave to do, make raverave to manipulate
horōi to wash horohorōi to wash repeatedly

When a statement or decision is stressed, ia immediately following
the verb acts as an intensifying particle. Examples:

'E ta'oto ia te mau ta'ata 'i uta 'i īera fa'a.
The people will sleep at the bottom of the valley.

'E riro ia te 'oire nō Pape'ete 'ei māta'ita'ira'a nā te mau feiā
ratere.
Papeete is becoming the delight of the tourists.
55. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'Ua fa'atupu 'oia 'i te vi. 2. 'Ua ha'aparari rātou 'i te mau hapaina.
3. 'E fa'atae mai vaau 'i tā'u tauiha'a. 4. 'Ua ha'amanī'i oe 'i te ū.
5. 'Ua fa'atupa'i 'oia 'i te hō'e pua'a. 6. Te hi'ohi'o ra rātou 'i te mau pōti'i. 7. 'E hahaere rāua 'i te mātete. 8. 'Ua rereva ātu tau na ta'a'a. 9. Te parauparau nei te mau pōti'i. 10. 'I ta'o'oto na māua.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. A lau na koconuts ko'te ko'te ko'te. 2. She will clean the room.
3. It is covered up. 4. I shall conclude our conversation. 5. The net
closed off. 6. I shall explain to him. 7. A feast was organised.
8. Cattle are imported to Tahiti. 9. The men paddled about.
10. He stared at the fish.
Lesson 10
THE NEGATIVE

The negative particles in Tahitian are as follows:

\[ \text{'a}i\text{ta} \quad \text{'}e'\text{ore} \]
\[ \text{'a}o\text{re} \quad \text{'e'ere} \]
\[ \text{'e'}\text{ita} \]

56. 'Aita and 'Aore

'Aita or 'aore are used to indicate negation with present or past tense. The negative particle always precedes the subject and the verb. With a negative sentence the word order is as follows:

negative particle + subject + verb + object

Examples:

'Aita te ta'ata 'i hohoni hia 'e te 'uri.
The man was not bitten by the dog.

'Aita vau 'i rave 'i te 'ohipa 'i teie po'ipo'i.
I did not work this morning.

'Aita vau 'e tāmā'a nei.*
I am not eating.

'Aita tā'u vahie 'i oti 'i te tāpū.
I have not finished cutting the wood.

'Aita vau 'e 'amu ra.
I was not eating.

'Aore may be used instead of 'aita, and has a more emphatic quality. Example:

'Aore au 'i tupā'i tā'ana. I did not hit him.

57. 'E'ita and 'E'ore

'E'ita or 'e'ore are used to indicate negation with future tense. The word order remains the same as for the present and past negative. Examples:

'E'ita vau 'e haere 'i teie nei 'i te mātete.
I shall not go to the market now.

* Note that 'e replaces the te of the present affirmative construction.
The man will not be bitten by the dog.

'E'ore has a stronger force than 'e'ita, in the same way that 'aore, is more emphatic than 'aita. Example:

'E'ore roa rātou 'e tae mai. They will never arrive.

58. 'E'ere

'E'ere is used in negative statements such as "there is not", "it is not". This type of negation is used mainly with sentences of the type not containing a verb in Tahitian. A few examples will make it clear:

'E'ere 'i te mea 'ohie. It is not easy.  
(Lit. it is not a thing easy)

'E'ere 'oia 'i te mea puai. He is not strong.  
(Lit. he is not a thing strong)

'E'ere is also used to negate the verbal sentence type explained in §47(ii). Thus:

'E'ere nā'u 'i rave 'i te puta. It was not I who took the book.

A detailed explanation of the uses of 'e'ere with non-verbal sentence types will be found in §§73 and 74.

59. Negative + Roa

Roa, immediately following any of the negative particles, corresponds to "never". Examples:

'Aita roa vau 'i 'ite. I have never seen it.

'E'ore roa rātou 'e tae mai. They will never arrive.

60. 'Aiteā and 'Aore ā

'Aiteā and 'aore ā correspond to the English "not yet", and occupy the same position in the sentence as 'aita. Examples:

'Aiteā 'ona 'i haere mai. He has not yet come.

'Aore ā 'ona 'i 'ite 'i te miti. He has not seen the sea yet.

61. 'Ore

'Ore is often placed after the verb, and corresponds to the English "without". Example:

'E rave tāua 'i te 'ohipa mai te fa'aea 'ore. 
We shall work without stopping.  
(Lit. will do we the work with the stop without)

'Ore is also used as a negative verb in such sentences as:

Nō te aha 'oe 'e 'ore ai 'e 'āu? 
Why don't you swim?
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

'Ia 'ore 'oia 'e 'amu fa'ahou 'i te mau ta'ata.
Lest he eat men again.

Further reference to 'ore as a verb is made in §98.
Some adverbs and adjectives take on a negative sense when followed by 'ore. Examples:

- pinepine often
- tu'utu'u slack
- nehenehe possible

pinepine 'ore rarely
tu'utu'u 'ore continually
nehenehe 'ore impossible

62. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'Aita te pōti'i 'i pa'imi hia 'e te taure'are'a tāne. 2. 'Aita tōna tāupo'o 'i 'ia hia 'inanahi ra. 3. 'Aita 'o Moana 'e ta'oto ra. 4. 'Aita te fenua 'i haumi. 5. 'Aita vau 'e tai'o nei. 6. 'E'ore vau 'e tāpū 'i te vahie. 7. 'E'ore 'oe 'e imu 'i te uaina. 8. 'E'ita 'oia 'e 'äu. 9. 'E'ita ratou 'e haere 'i te mātete. 10. 'Aore vau 'e tāmā'a nei.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. I shall not go to the market. 2. The gift was not given to the chief. 3. The men did not arrive. 4. I am not eating. 5. You (pl.) did not eat. 6. The dog will not bite the man. 7. Peu is not swimming. 8. I shall not eat the yams. 9. The woman did not plant the coconuts. 10. They (pl.) are not children.
Lesson 11
VERBAL SENTENCE TYPES

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te tao'a</td>
<td>the present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tavanaugh</td>
<td>the mayor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tavana rahia</td>
<td>the Governor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mata'eina'a</td>
<td>the district</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tama'ara'a</td>
<td>the feast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pae moana</td>
<td>the edge of the lagoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fare toa</td>
<td>the shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te piripou</td>
<td>the trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ua</td>
<td>to rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patiri</td>
<td>to thunder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vai</td>
<td>to be, exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reva</td>
<td>to leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tae</td>
<td>to arrive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'ari'i</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'atupu</td>
<td>to organise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a'ite</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu'u</td>
<td>to put down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mana'o</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tupu</td>
<td>to exist, grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti'i</td>
<td>to get, pick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hina'aro</td>
<td>to want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rave</td>
<td>to do, make, take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maita'i</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This lesson constitutes a revision of all the lessons so far, with emphasis on practice in sentence formation. Each verbal sentence type will be expressed in terms of a formula, since word order in the Tahitian sentence is unlike that of English or French.

63. Intransitive

When the verb is intransitive, the order is as follows:

verb + subject

Examples:

'Ia haere au 'i te mātete. I went to the market.
'Ia tae mai vau 'i te hora piti. I arrived at two o'clock.

64. Transitive

With transitive verbs, the word order is as follows:

verb + subject + direct object

Examples:

'E tupa'i vau 'i te hō'e pua'a. I shall kill a pig.
'Ua 'amu vau 'i te fe'i. I ate a red banana.
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

65. Dual Object
When a second object or indirect object is expressed, it follows the first object. Thus:

verb + subject + object + indirect object

Examples:
'Ua horo'a ātu vau 'i te hō'e tao'a 'īāna.
I gave him a present.
'Ua pāpa'i vau 'i te rata 'īāna 'inanahi ra.
I wrote him a letter yesterday.

66. Attributive
When an attributive sentence is constructed, the attribute follows the direct object and is preceded by the particle 'ei, the attributive marker.
Example:
'Ua mā'iiti rātou 'īāna 'ei tavana.
They elected him mayor.

67. Passive
With a passive verb the word order is as follows:

verb + subject + agent

Examples:
'Ua hohoni hia 'oia 'e te 'uri. He was bitten by the dog.
'Ua tāpe'a hia 'oia 'e te muto'i. He was arrested by the police.

68. Passive Indirect Object
When a passive verb has an indirect object, the word order is:

verb + subject + indirect object + agent

Example:
'Ua horo'a hia te tao'a 'i te tamaiti 'e te tavana.
The present was given to the boy by the chief.

With the passive attributive (cf. §66), the word order is:

verb + subject + attribute

Example:
'Ua mā'iiti hia 'oia 'ei tavana. He was elected mayor.
VERBAL SENTENCE TYPES

69. Impersonal Verbs

There exists a series of impersonal verbs in Tahitian, used with reference to the weather. Examples:

'e ūa it will rain
te ūa nei it is raining
'e patiri it thunders

These verbs follow the pattern set out for the verbs above, with the exception that the subject is not expressed.

70. Vai

This verb means “to be present, to exist, to be in a certain state”. It follows the regular pattern of the verbs discussed above, but does not occur in the passive form. Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>te vai nei au</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>te vai nei 'oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>te vai nei 'oia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was</td>
<td>te vai ra vau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>te vai ra 'oe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he was</td>
<td>te vai ra 'oia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Te vai ra te hō'e ta'ata tei pāpa'i 'i taua 'a'amu ra.

There was a man who wrote that story.

This verb, however, must NOT be used to translate such sentences as “I am sick”, “he is well”, etc., but must be used with sentences of the type “there was a man . . . ” Sentence types such as “I am well” are non-verbal in Tahitian, and will be explained in §73.

71. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Uarevacitumaua. 2. Te vai nei te mau motu Tuamotu. 3. 'E tae 'oia 'i te mata'eina'a nō Pa'ea. 4. 'E haere ātu 'oia 'i Mataiea. 5. 'Ua fa'ari'i hia 'oia 'e te ari'i vahine. 6. 'Ua fa'atupu hia te hō'e tāmā'ara'a. 7. 'E fa'a'ite vau 'tāna 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa. 8. 'E tu'u rātou 'i te 'upe'a. 9. 'E haere rātou 'i te pae moana. 10. Te mana'o nei māua 'e haere ātu 'i te mau motu.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. You two will eat well today. 2. All the men will go. 3. They (pl.) went in the morning. 4. They (pl.) will eat. 5. There are flowers in all the islands. 6. That flower does not grow in all places. 7. You (pl.) picked that flower. 8. We (pl. inc.) are going into a shop. 9. I want a pair of trousers. 10. I will take it.
Lesson 12

NON-VERBAL SENTENCES

In Tahitian there exists a series of sentences in which there is no verb. This phenomenon is common in Oceanic languages, but quite strange to speakers of European languages. These sentences are extremely common in everyday speech, and warrant particular attention and study on the part of the student.

72. It is, There is

The first type of non-verbal sentence corresponds to the English sentence type, “it is/there is/there are”.

Note: Throughout this grammar Tahitian is explained in its own terms, but in the case of Tahitian non-verbal sentences an explanation in terms of English will clarify their structure and usage.

(i) This type of sentence consists of the particle 'e (it is/there is), a noun, and a locative/temporal phrase. Examples:

'E naonao tō 'onei.  There are mosquitoes here.
'E ta'urua tō 'ananahi.  There is a feast tomorrow.
'E i'a tō roto 'i te 'upe'a.  There are fish in the net.

It can be seen from these examples that the first part consists of 'e + noun, while the second consists of tō + locative/temporal phrase. The first part alone constitutes a sentence in response to a question.

Example:

'E aha 'īera?  What is that?
'E mā'a tahiti.  It is Tahitian food.

'E changes to 'o when the subject is a pronoun or proper noun.

Example:

'O vau.  It is I.
'O Teri'i.  It is Terii.

With this first type of non-verbal sentence the negative is formed by placing the negative particle 'āita before the affirmative sentence. Thus:

'Āita 'e naonao tō 'onei.  There are no mosquitoes here.
'Āita 'e ta'urua tō 'ananahi.  There is no feast tomorrow.
NON-VERBAL SENTENCES

Instead of simply 'aita, there is a series of negatives for this sentence type which will be listed in order of increasing intensity:

'Aore re'a 'e ta'ata. There is hardly anyone.
'Aita 'e ta'ata. There is no-one.
'Aita roa 'e ta'ata. There is no-one.
'Aore 'e ta'ata. There is no-one.
'Aore roa 'e ta'ata. There is no-one (absolute).

(ii) A sub-type of the sentence construction explained above consists of:

'e + numeral adjective + noun

This structure corresponds to such sentences as “there are many . . .”
The numeral adjective may be either raverahi or raverau. Examples:

'E raverahi mau rātere. There are many tourists.
'E raverau mau ta'ata. There are many men.

Raverahi indicates many of the same kind, while raverau indicates many of different kinds.

When a dependent clause follows this type of sentence, the definite article te is sometimes inserted. Example:

'e raverahi te mau rātere . . . there are many tourists who . . .

73. Identificational

The second type of non-verbal sentence in Tahitian corresponds to the English type, “he is strong”, or “the ground is wet”. In other words, the first part of the utterance is composed of a noun qualified by an adjective, and the second is filled by a noun or pronoun. This may be summarised in the formula:

\[
\text{noun + adjective} + \text{noun + pronoun}
\]

Examples:

'E mea marō te ha'ari.*
The coconuts are dry.
(Lit. is a thing dry the coconuts)
'E mea pa'ari te ūfi.
The yams are hard.
(Lit. is a thing hard the yams)
'E ta'ata puai 'oia.
He is strong.
(Lit. is a man strong he)

* This contrasts with:

'ua marō te ha'ari

which suggests that the coconuts have become dry, but were previously wet.
"E mea āu nā'u tēra hei-pūpū.
I like that shell necklace.

As with the first type of non-verbal sentence, the first part alone may constitute a sentence in response to a question, or when the context is known. Example:

"E mea 'ohie. It is easy.

The negative of this second non-verbal sentence type may take two forms:

(i) 'e 'ere

Examples:
'E 'ere 'i te mea 'ohie. It is not easy.
'E 'ere 'oia 'i te mea puai. He is not strong.

(ii) 'aita

With any sentence of the form 'e mea, etc., the adjective may become a verb in the negative. Examples:

'e mea haumi te fenua
the ground is wet
↓
'aita te fenua 'i haumi
'e mea pa'āri te āfi
the yams are hard
↓
'aita te āfi 'i pa'āri

74. Equational

The third type of non-verbal sentence in Tahitian is equational, of the type "that is a coconut tree", "that is my father". It may take two forms, as follows:

(i) 'e + noun + demonstrative

Example:
'E tumu ha'ari tēra. That is a coconut tree.
(Lit. is a coconut tree that)

(ii) demonstrative + noun

Example:
Tēra tō'u metua tāne. That is my father.
(Lit. that my father)

The negative of this sentence type is the same as for §73. Example:
'E 'ere tēra ta'ata tō'u metua tāne.
That man is not my father.
75. To have

(i) The last type of non-verbal sentence translates the English “to have”. It is composed of:

’e + noun + possessive pronoun

Examples:

’E ’ava’ava tā’u. I have some cigarettes.
(Lit. are cigarettes mine)

’E ʻuri tā ʻatou. They have a dog.

’E āpo’ō ʻoʻu. I have a head.

’E fare nehehe tō tēra taʻata. That man has a nice house.

Note: The possessive pronouns are identical to the possessive adjectives listed in §37.

(ii) When possession is stressed, such as in the reply to the question, “whose are the cigarettes?” (those are my cigarettes), the word order explained for this last non-verbal sentence is reversed, nā or nō replacing the tā or tō.* Examples:

Nā u tēra ’ava’ava. Those are my cigarettes.
(Lit. for me those cigarettes)

Nō u tēra va’a. That is my outrigger canoe.

When possession is emphasised, as above, nouns normally taking the possessive particle tā, nā, ā, may change to tō, nō, ō, in order to stress absolute ownership. Example:

Nā vai tēra uāti? Whose is that watch?

Nō u tēra uāti. That is my watch.

(iii) When a numeral occurs with “to have”, as in “I have two pigs”, the word order is:

’e + numeral + possessed noun

Example:

’E piti ʻāna pua’a. He has two pigs.
(Lit. is two his pigs)

(iv) The negative of the basic sentence type described in §75(i) is formed by placing ’aita before the possessive pronoun. The following formula will make it clear:

\[
\text{[’aita]} + \text{possessive pronoun} + \text{’e} + \text{noun}
\]

* The nō, nā form has a benefactive overtone, absent from the tō, tā form.
Examples:

'Aita tā'u 'e vahine. I have no wife.
(Lit. not mine is wife)

'Aita tā'u 'e 'ava'ava. I have no cigarettes.

'Aita to tera ta'ata 'e fare nehenehe. That man has not got a nice house.

76. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'E mea haumi te fenua. 2. Teie tā'u vahine fa'aipoipo. 3. 'E piti tā'u pua'a. 4. 'E'uri maite'i tā rātou. 5. Tēra tōna fare. 6. 'Aita te ufi 'i pā'ari. 7. 'E mea rahi roa tēra ta'ata. 8. 'E mea nehenehe tēra pōtī'i. 9. 'E'ere 'i te mea iti. 10. 'Aita tā māua 'e moni.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. The road is long. 2. It is not long. 3. There are pawpaws here. 4. There is a feast tomorrow. 5. The chief has some pigs. 6. I have no house. 7. He has two hands. 8. The orange is very good. 9. They (pl.) have no money. 10. He is not strong.
Lesson 13

TIME AND FREQUENCY

By this time the student will be able to conduct a simple conversation in Tahitian, and before we move from statement sentences to other types, such as interrogative and dependent sentences, we will examine phrases, such as time and location, which may be included in any sentence type, be it statement or otherwise.

77. Time Phrases

'inanahi  
yesterday
'inanahi  ātura  
the day before yesterday
'i napō ra  
last night
'i teie mahāna  
today
'i teie po'ipo'i  
this morning (6-10 a.m.)
'i teie āvatea  
this morning (10 a.m.-noon)
'i teie āhiāhi  
this afternoon (noon-6 p.m.)
'i teie pō  
tonight (6 p.m.-midnight)
'i teie ru'i  
tonight (midnight-6 a.m.)
'i teie a'ahiāta  
tomorrow
'ananahi  
the day after tomorrow
'ananahi ātu  
tomorrow morning
'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i  
tomorrow night
'ananahi 'ia pō  
now
'a napō  
before (plus verb)
'i teie nei  
before, first
'i teie taime  
before (plus noun)
hou 'a  
them, at that time
nā mua a'e  
then
nā mua  
then
nā mua a'e 'i  
thereupon
'i reira  
then, after that
'i te reira taime  
then
ihora  
then
ātura  
then
'i muri iho  
then
ā'e ra  
then
The time phrase or adverb is usually placed either at the beginning or at the end of the clause or sentence. Examples:

'Ananahi 'e haere ai vau 'e 'āu.
Tomorrow I shall go swimming.
'E reva ātu vau 'i teie pō.
I shall leave tonight.

Hou 'a tupu ai teie 'oro'a rahi ....
Before this big celebration takes place ....

'E nehenehe tā 'oe 'e rave nā mua.
You may take some first.
Nā mua ā'e 'i te reira, te rave ra 'oia 'i te 'ohipa fa'a'apu.
Before that, he was a farmer.

'I reira tō'u farereira'a 'iāna.
It was then that I met him.
'Ua haere ihora 'oia 'e pīpī 'i te tiare.
Then he went and watered the flowers.

'Ua tāpū ātura 'oia 'i te vahie.
Then he cut the wood.
'I muri iho, 'ua pohe 'oia.
After that, he died.

'Ua ti'a ā'e ra 'oia 'i ni'a.
Thereupon he stood up.

Mai te mahāna 'i reva ātu ai 'oe, 'aita te fare 'i taut.
Since you left, the house has not changed.

Mai te hora piti 'e tae noa ātu 'i te hora pae.
From two until five o'clock.

'I muta'a ihora 'aita te mau feā ma'ohi 'e 'amu 'i te mā'a popa'a.
Formerly the Polynesians did not eat European food.

Fatata, "soon", has a verbal construction unlike the other time phrases, as follows:

'Ua fatata te tāime 'e parauparau ai vau 'i te reo Tahiti.
I will soon speak Tahitian.
(Lit. is near the time will speak I Tahitian)

78. Frequency Phrases
Related to time phrases are adverbs of frequency, which do not usually occupy the same position in the sentence as the time phrases listed above. Some common frequency expressions are:

pinepine often
TIME AND FREQUENCY

noa, noa ra always, still, again
ēna already (distant)
ā'e nei already (recent)
ā still
fa'ahou again, once more
'i te tahi mau taima from time to time

Adverbs of frequency always follow immediately the verb stem to which they refer. Examples:

'I e haere pinepine mai au 'i 'onei. I come here often.
'I e haere pinepine au 'i te 'oire. I often go to town.
Te ta'oto noa ra 'oia. He is still asleep.
'Ua reva ēna 'oia. He has already left.
'Ua 'amu ā'e nei au. I have already eaten.
'E hina'aro ā 'oe 'i te 'ava'ava? Do you want another cigarette?
'E ho'i fa'ahou mai ā 'oe? Will you come back again?
'I te tahi mau taima 'e haere 'oia 'e āu. He goes swimming from time to time.

79. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Inanahi ātura 'ua haere au 'e tāi'ā. 2. 'I teie po'ipo'i 'ua ta'i au.
3. 'I teie āhiāhi 'e haere tātou 'e ho'o mai 'i te farāoa. 4. 'Ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i 'e haere tāua 'e rāve 'i te 'ohipa. 5. 'I teie pō 'e ta'oto vau 'i te fare. 6. 'Ananahi 'e ho'o mai vau 'i te pere'o'o. 7. 'Ua ta'i pine-pine te tamāhine. 8. Te 'amu noa ra 'o Teri'i. 9. 'Ua horo'a ātu 'oia 'i te puta 'inanahi ra. 10. 'Ua 'ite vau 'i te pōti'i 'inanahi ātura.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. I saw you yesterday. 2. The dog bit the boy today. 3. Yesterday my hat was stolen. 4. Tomorrow I shall write a letter. 5. We (pl. inc.) will soon arrive in Tahiti. 6. Tomorrow morning they (pl.) are going fishing. 7. Yesterday the dog bit my leg. 8. This afternoon we (pl. inc.) shall go to town. 9. Tonight we (pl. inc.) will eat Peu's pig. 10. Yesterday I saw some beautiful flowers.
Lesson 14

LOCATION AND DIRECTION

80. Location

In Tahitian there is a series of locational adverb phrases, as follows:

- 'i raro a'ē \(\rightarrow\) under
- 'i raro \(\rightarrow\) low down
- nā raro \(\rightarrow\) low, low down
- 'i ni'a a'ē \(\rightarrow\) above
- nā ni'a a'ē \(\rightarrow\) above
- 'i ni'a iho \(\rightarrow\) on, up on
- 'i piha'i iho \(\rightarrow\) beside
- 'i roto \(\rightarrow\) in, into, inside
- nā roto \(\rightarrow\) from in, from inside
- 'i ropu \(\rightarrow\) in the middle
- 'i rotopu \(\rightarrow\) among
- nā ropu \(\rightarrow\) between
- 'i rapae \(\rightarrow\) outside
- 'i muri mai \(\rightarrow\) behind, at the back of
- nā muri mai \(\rightarrow\) behind
- 'i mua \(\rightarrow\) to the front
- 'i mua mai \(\rightarrow\) in front of, at the front
- nā mua mai \(\rightarrow\) in front of
- 'i 'onei \(\rightarrow\) here
- 'e tae noa ātu \(\rightarrow\) as far as
- 'e 'ati noa a'e \(\rightarrow\) around
- mai \(\rightarrow\) from
- nō \(\rightarrow\) from
- 'i, 'ei, tei \(\rightarrow\) in, at, to

There are two positions in the sentence in which the location adverb phrases normally occur.

(i) With non-verbal sentences, the location phrase is often placed at the beginning of the sentence; observe that 'i becomes tei in this position. Examples:

*Tei raro a'e te 'uri 'i te 'amura'amā'a.*
The dog is under the table.
LOCATION AND DIRECTION

Tei raro te mā'a ha'ari.
The coconuts are down (on the ground).
Tei ni'a ā'e te manureva 'i te 'oire.
The aeroplane is above the town.
Tei ni'a iho te puta 'i te 'amura'amā'a.
The book is on the table.
Tei pihā'i iho te parahira'a 'i te 'amura'amā'a.
The chair is beside the table.
Tei roto te ī'a 'i te 'upe'a.
The fish is in the net.
Tei ropu te pahi 'i te āva.
The steamer is in the middle of the passage.
Tei rotopu te tavāna 'i te hui ra'atira.
The chief is among the people.
Tei rapae te mau pe'ue.
The chair is beside the table.
Tei muri mai te tumu 'uru 'i te fare.
The breadfruit tree is behind the house.
Tei mua mai te pere'ō'o uira 'i te fare.
The car is in front of the house.
Tei 'onei te mau pōti'i purotu.
The beautiful girls are here.
Tei te fare te mau manihini.
The guests are at the house.
Tei Pape'ete 'oia 'inanahi.
He was in Papeete yesterday.
But: 'Ei Pape'ete 'oia 'inanahi.
He will be in Papeete tomorrow.

But that tei is replaced by 'ei when future tense is indicated.

With the type of stative sentence, “there is a . . .”, as explained in §72, the pattern there outlined is followed. Example:
'E i'a iō roto 'i te miti.
There is a fish in the water.

(ii) With verbal sentence types, the adverbial location phrase is normally found after the verb. As the location adverb phrases occur often in conversation, each of the phrases is exemplified in verbal as well as non-verbal sentences, as follows:
'Ua ori haere 'oia 'i raro ā'e 'i te tumu ha'ari.
He walked beneath the coconut palms.
'Ua rere te manureva nā raro roa.
The aeroplane flew very low.
'Ua rere te manureva nā ni'a 'i te 'oire.
The aeroplane flew over the town.
'E pa'uma 'oia 'i ni'a iho 'i te tumu rā'au.
He will climb up the tree.
'Ua parahi 'oia 'i piha'ī iho 'ia'u.
He sat beside me.
'Ua taora vau 'i te popo 'i roto 'i te miti.
I threw the ball into the sea.
'Ua hitimahuta vau nā roto 'i tā'u moemoea.
I woke with a start from my dream.
'E haere te mau ta'ata 'i ropu 'i te miti nā ni'a 'i tō ratōu va'a.
The men go out into the middle of the water in their canoes
'Ua ʻōri haere 'oia 'i rotopu 'i te hui ra'atira.
He walked among the people.
'Ua haere 'oia nā ropu 'i te mau tumu rā'au.
He walked between the trees.
'Ua tatara 'oia 'i tōna mau 'ahu 'i rapae 'i te afata.
He took his clothes out of the box.
'Ua vaiho vau 'i te tipi 'i muri mai 'i te fare.
I put the knife behind the house.
'Ua 'utaru vau nā muri mai 'i te fare.
I weeded behind the house.
A hiʻo 'i mua!
Look to the front!
'Ua tāpu 'ona 'i te tumu rā'au 'i mua mai 'i te fare.
He cut down the tree in front of the house.
'Ua tamu 'oia 'i te tiare nā mua mai 'i te fare.
She planted flowers in front of the house.
'Ua haere mai 'oia 'i 'onei 'inanahi.
He came here yesterday.
'Ua ʻau 'ona mai Papeʻete 'e tae ātu 'i Moʻorea.
He swam from Papeete to Moorea.
'Ua haere 'oia 'e 'ati noa ā'e te fare.
He went around the house.
'Ua tae mai 'ona mai te fenua Farāni mai.
He has come from France.
'E raverahi mau rātere nō te fenua Farāni.
There are many tourists from France.

In verbal sentence types, 'i alone corresponds to the English “at, in, to”. Examples:

'i Tahiti to, in Tahiti  'i te fare to, at the house
'i Farāni to, in France  'i ʻō Teriʻi to, at Terii’s place
'i te 'oire to, in town  'i ʻō Peu to, at Peu’s place
'i te pae tahatai to, at the beach
81. Direction

There are two series of directionals in Tahitian. The first series is as follows:

- **mai**  
  towards the speaker
- **ātu**  
  away from the speaker
- **ai**  
  movement

Every verb of motion must be accompanied by one of the directional particles, **mai** or **ātu**, if the verb refers to a person as direct or indirect object. The following formula should be borne in mind during the explanation of their exact functions:

\[ + \text{verb} \pm \left[ \frac{\text{mai}}{\text{ātu}} \right] \pm \text{ai} \]

(a) Directional Unexpressed. First let us take a sentence where there is no reference to person as object or indirect object. Example:

'E haere vau 'i te 'oire.
I shall go to town.

Here none of the directionals is used, because there is no object person reference.

(b) **Ātu**. This word indicates movement away from the speaker or principal object of the sentence towards someone else. Examples:

'E horo'a ātu vau 'ia 'oe 'i te tao'a.
I shall give you a present.

'E parau ātu 'oe 'ia rātou.
You will speak to them.

(c) **Mai**. **Mai** indicates movement towards the speaker or focal point of the sentence by another person or object. Examples:

'E parau mai 'oe 'ia'u.
You will speak to me.

'E horo'a mai 'oia 'i te tao'a 'ia'u.
He will give me a present.

'Ua reva mai te pahi.
The boat has left (to come towards the speaker).

**Mai** may also be used to indicate movement towards the focal point of the sentence, although away from the speaker, especially with reciprocal actions of the following type:

Let us suppose that two people are talking and that the first person has said.

'E papa'i ātu vau 'ia 'oe 'i te rata.
I shall write you a letter.
In reply to this, the second person might say, "And I shall write you a letter too" in Tahitian:

'E papa'i mai vau 'ia 'oe 'i te rata.
And I shall write you a letter.

In such a case, the focus or principal object of the second sentence is "you", thus requiring mai rather than ātu, indicating movement towards the focal point rather than away from the speaker.

(d) **Ai.** A directional indicating movement of any type or movement towards a consequence, *ai* is used when the verb itself is preceded by any adverbial phrase denoting present or future time, location, or situation, without reference to person.* Examples:

'I te hora pae 'e haere ai vau 'i te 'oire.
At five o'clock I shall go to town.

When there is also person reference, as in (b) and (c) above, then *mai ai* or *ātu ai* are used. Examples:

'I te hora piti 'e horo'ā mai ai 'ōia 'i te tao'ā 'ia'u.
At two o'clock he will give me a present.

'I te hora piti 'e horo'ā ātu ai vau 'i te tao'ā 'ia rātou.
At two o'clock I shall give them a present.

The second series of directionals in Tahitian is as follows:

- **nei** near the speaker
- **na** near the addressee
- **ra** far from the speaker

This series of directionals applies to nouns, rather than to verbs.

(e) **Nei.** This indicates that the object is near the speaker, with overtones of present time. Example:

*A rave 'i te tipi nei!* Take this knife!

(f) **Na.** *Na* indicates that the object is near the addressee in space and time. Example:

'Ua fa'aea 'outou 'i Tahiti na. You stayed in Tahiti.

*Na* is also used in conjunction with the imperative. Thus:

*A hi'o na!* Look!

(g) **Ra.** This indicates an object far from the speaker in space and time. Examples:

'Ua oti te fare ra. The house is finished.

*i te matamua ra* in the beginning

It can be seen that *nei, na,* and *ra* are used as tense formatives, as was seen in §46. However, they may also be used with verbs, when

* It is also used with interrogatives; see §§98–100.
the idea of space rather than time is uppermost in the mind of the speaker. Thus, instead of:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te 'amu nei au</td>
<td>I am eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'amu nei 'oe</td>
<td>you are eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

one may have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te 'amu nei au</td>
<td>I am eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'amu na 'oe</td>
<td>you are eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'amu ra 'oia</td>
<td>he is eating</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this case, the relationship in space is the same as that for the usage of nei, na, and ra with nouns, as explained above.

Two other directionals in common use are: ʻi uta, towards the interior, towards the land, and ʻi tai, towards the sea. Examples:

'ʻE ta'oto te mau ta'ata ʻi uta ʻi te faʻa.

The men will sleep at the bottom of the valley.

'ʻUa painu te mau maʻa haʻari ʻi tai.

The coconuts drifted towards the open sea.

82. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. Tei ni'a iho te hapaina ʻi te 'amura'amā'a. 2. Tei raro ʻa'e te moʻihina uaina ʻi te 'amura'amā'a. 3. ʻE haere vau ʻi te 'oire. 4. ʻUa haere rātou ʻi ʻo Teri'i. 5. ʻUa haere mai 'oia. 6. ʻE reva ātu vau. 7. ʻI teie mahāna ʻe haere ai vau ʻi te 'oire. 8. ʻI te hora piti ʻe haere mai ai rātou. 9. ʻUa rave 'oia ʻi te 'ohipa ʻā iaua ta'ata ra. 10. A inu ʻi te pape nei.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. The fish is in the water. 2. There are no fish in the water. 3. The dog is in front of the house. 4. He is in the tree. 5. The man is behind the house. 6. You will write me a letter. 7. Today I shall go to Australia. 8. They (pl.) will arrive at 5 o'clock. 9. The man came. 10. You will tell me.
### Lesson 15

**OPTIONAL PHRASES**

In this lesson we will examine the benefactive, manner, and accompaniment phrases which may be added to any verbal sentence.

#### 83. Benefactive

The benefactive forms are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nō'u, nä'u</td>
<td>for me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō 'oe, nä 'oe</td>
<td>for you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōna, nāna</td>
<td>for him, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō taua, nā taua</td>
<td>for us two (inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō māua, nā māua</td>
<td>for us two (exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō 'orua, nā 'orua</td>
<td>for you two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō rāua, nā rāua</td>
<td>for them two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō tātou, nā tātou</td>
<td>for us (inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō mātou, nā mātou</td>
<td>for us (exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō 'outou, nā 'outou</td>
<td>for you (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō rātou, nā rātou</td>
<td>for them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā te tavana</td>
<td>for the chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>no te tavana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā Teri'i</td>
<td>for Terii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nō Teri'i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It can be seen, then, that the benefactive consists of *nō*, *nā*, followed by a pronoun, common noun, or proper noun. The use of *nō*, *nā* is the same as that of *tō*, *tā* with the possessive adjective in §37. Examples:

- 'E haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te puta nā 'oe.
  I shall go and get a book for you.
- 'E haere vau 'e ho'o mai 'i te va'a nō 'oe.
  I shall go and buy a canoe for you.
- 'E haere au 'e tī'i 'i te mā'a nā te 'uri.
  I shall go and get some food for the dog.
- 'E haere au 'e tī'i 'i te tia'a nō tā'u vahine.
  I shall go and get some shoes for my wife.
84. Accompaniment

In Tahitian, accompaniment (= with) may be conveyed in three different ways, as follows:

(i) *e*

Examples:

'ē haere a u 'e ōri haere e tā'u 'uri.
I am going for a walk with my dog.

'ē haere au 'i te 'oire e taua ta'ata ra.
I shall go to town with that man.

'ua reva ātu vau e 'o Peu.
I left with Peu.

(ii) *nā muri iho*

This form is synonymous with *e*. Examples:

'ua ōri haere vau nā muri iho 'ia 'oe.
I went for a walk with you.

'ua reva ātu 'o Peu nā muri iho 'ia Teri'i.
Peu left with Terii.

(iii) When the one who accompanies is a third person or persons, a pronominal form is often used. Thus:

'ua reva ātu maua 'o Peu.
I left with Peu.

'ua reva ātu Peu rāua 'o Teri'i.
Peu left with Terii.

85. Manner

The manner adverb, telling "how the action was done", is always placed immediately after the verb stem and even before the passive marker *hia*. Manner prepositional phrases, however, normally follow the subject.

Some common manner adverbs and prepositional manner phrases are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vitiviti</td>
<td>quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maita'i</td>
<td>well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ri'i</td>
<td>a little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taere</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ma te puai</td>
<td>strongly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai</td>
<td>like, as</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā ni'a</td>
<td>by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā roto</td>
<td>by means of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

'ua horo vitiviti 'oia.
He ran fast.

'ua papu'a maita'i te 'a'ahu 'o'omo.
The shirt was well washed.
'Ia paraparau ri'i iho a tāua 'i te reo Tahiti. We must speak Tahitian a little.  
'Ua ta'iri maïta'i hia vau.  
I was well beaten.  
'Ua roa'a 'iāna te rē nā roto 'i tōna ītōito. He won through his courage.  
'Ua 'au 'oia ma te puai. He swam strongly.  
Mai 'ia 'oe 'ato'a te hoho'a 'ō tā 'oe tamaiti. Your son is like you.  
Mai tō'u tō 'oe tāupo'o. Your hat is like mine.  
'Ua reva ātu 'oia nā ni'a 'i te manureva. He left by plane. 

With non-verbal sentences:  
'E mea taere tāna tāmā'a. He eats slowly.  
'E mea vitiviti tāna horo. He runs fast.  
Manner is also conveyed by the following construction:  

maï te + verb + hia

Example:  
'Ua manui a 'oia mai te taouteru hia 'e tōna metua tāne. He succeeded with the help of his father.  

This construction does not occur often in conversation, and its usage sometimes suggests accompaniment, as in the following sentence:  
'E tupu ia te tahi 'orira'a hanahana mai te peretiti hia 'e te tavana rahia. There is a grand ball, with the Governor as guest of honour.  

86. Exercise  
(a) Translate into English:  
1. 'E haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te mā'a nā tā'u 'uri. 2. 'E ho'o mai vau 'i te parahira'a nō tō'u fāre. 3. 'Ua rave mai vau 'i te hō'e va'a nō 'oe. 4. 'E horo'a ātu 'outou 'i te tao'a nā te pōti'i. 5. 'Ua haere 'oia 'i te 'oire e tāna 'uri. 6. 'Ua āu maïta'i 'oia. 7. 'Ua haere 'oi'o'i 'oia 'e tai'a. 8. 'E mea maïta'i tāna 'āura'a. 9. Nā'u iēra puta. 10. 'Ua ho'o mai vau 'i te hō'e pua'a nā tō'u na metua.
(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. I shall buy a hat for you. 2. He bought a fish for his wife. 3. I
bought some fish for the feast. 4. They (pl.) got the book for me.
5. That book is for Terii. 6. I went to town with Peu. 7. He swam
with his dog. 8. He swam fast. 9. He is swimming fast. 10. I made
this canoe for you.
Lesson 16

PURPOSE AND CAUSE

Two important phrase types in Tahitian are the purpose and cause phrases, which correspond to the English “in order to” and “because”.

87. Purpose

There are four methods of indicating purpose in Tahitian, as follows:

(i) no te + verb

This form is used when purpose is stressed, when the subject of both verbs is the same. Examples:

'Ua haere 'oia no te rave mai 'i te farāoa.
He went in order to get some bread.

'Ua rave 'oia 'i te to'i nō te tāpū 'i te vahie.
He took an axe in order to cut the wood.

Nō te hamanira'a 'i te pcu.
In order to make the posts.

(ii) 'ia + verb

This form is used when the subject of both verbs is not the same. Examples:

Te 'āu ra 'oia 'ia riro te rē 'iāna.
He swam so that the prize might go to him.

'Ua ha'amaramarama maita'i vau 'iāna 'ia papū maita'i 'oia.
I explained carefully so that he would understand fully.

* The form without -ra'a occurs more frequently, but either construction may be used, according to preference.
(iii) 'e + verb
This form is used when consequence rather than purpose is expressed. Examples:

'Ua haere 'oia 'e pa'imi 'i te pua'a.
He went to look for the pigs.

Te haere nei tō'u metua tāne 'e pīpī 'i te tiare.
My father is going to water the flowers.

(iv) noun + verb
When the subject and purpose are closely linked, the verb immediately follows the noun and fills the role of an adjective. Examples:

'E tipi tāpū 'ina'i pua'atoro tēra.
That knife is for cutting meat.

'E mau 'uri āua'u pua'a tēra.
Those dogs are for hunting pigs.

Note that a verb + -ra'a may also follow a noun as a modifier without overtones of purpose. Examples:

88. Cause
In Tahitian there are three methods of indicating cause, as follows:

no te mea
no + possessive adjective + verb + -ra'a
nā roto 'i

(i) no te mea
This is the form most commonly used to indicate cause. Examples:

'Ua 'iria 'oia nō te mea 'ua parari 'ia'u te hi'o nō te ha'amaramarama.
He is angry because I broke the window-panes.

'Ua ma'i hia vau nō te mea 'ua 'amu vau 'i te i'a ta'aero.
I am sick because I ate bad fish.

'I tāpū na vau 'i te vahie nō te mea 'aita 'e vahie nō te tunura'a 'i te mā'a.
I cut the wood because there was no wood to cook the food.

(ii) nō + possessive adjective + verb + -ra'a
Examples:

'Ua 'oa'oa 'oia nō tōna revara'a 'i Tahiti.
He is happy because he is going to Tahiti.
(Lit. he is happy with his going to Tahiti)
I am sick because I ate bad fish.

(iii) nā roto 'i

Example:

'Ua rave au nā roto 'i tō'u here 'īāna.

I did it because I love her.

(Lit. I did it in my loving her)

These three forms may be used one for the other, although the first form is the most common in conversational Tahitian.

89. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Ua haere rātou nō te rave mai 'i te farāoa. 2. 'Ua haere 'o Teri'i e tāpū 'i te vahie. 3. 'Ua haere vau nō te mea 'ua hina'aro vau 'i te puta. 4. 'Ua fa'aea 'oia 'i te fare nō te mea 'e ūa. 5. 'E mea āu nā'u nō te mea 'e tiare nehenehe tēa. 6. 'Ua reva ātu 'oia nō te ōri haere. 7. 'Ua ta'oto noa 'oia nō te mea 'ua rohirohi 'oia. 8. 'Ua rave vau 'i te 'ohipa nō te orara'a. 9. Te hamani ra 'oia 'i te poti 'ia nehenehe tāna 'e haere 'e tāi'a. 10. 'Ua haere ātu 'oia 'i te hora 'ahuru ma piti nō te mea 'e tāmā'a 'oia 'i ō Teri'i tāne.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

1. He went to get some fish. 2. He took the hammer to build the house. 3. He bought some yams to give to his mother. 4. He is angry because I ate his fish. 5. I am happy because he is coming. 6. I like her because she is beautiful. 7. He still sat down because he was tired. 8. The leaves fell because the wind was strong. 9. He went bathing in the sea because it was hot. 10. He will go to town to see his friend.
Lesson 17

IMPERATIVES

90. The Three Degrees of Imperative

There are three degrees of imperative in Tahitian, each with its own form, as follows:

(i) \( a + \) verb

This is the strongest form, which is in fact an absolute command. It is formed by preceding any verb stem by the imperative particle \( a \).

Examples:

\[ \text{A tamā'a!} \quad \text{Eat!} \]
\[ \text{or A tamā'a 'oe!} \quad \text{Eat (you)!} \]

(The verb may be followed by the subject for the sake of clarity.)

\[ \text{A horo'a ātu iera puta 'īāna!} \quad \text{Give him that book!} \]
\[ \text{A hi'o na 'i tēra vāhi!} \quad \text{Look at that place!} \]

The negative or prohibitive form is:

\( 'eiaha + 'e + \) verb

Example:

\[ 'Eiaha 'e 'amu 'i teie ūfi. \quad \text{Do not eat this yam.} \]

(ii) \( 'e + \) verb

This imperative form is not an absolute command, but rather an imperative of persuasion. Example:

\[ 'E haere tāua. \quad \text{Let us (two) go.} \]
\[ 'E haere mai 'outou. \quad \text{Come here.} \]

(iii) \( 'ia + \) verb

This is the exhortative form of the imperative, “let us, let them”, etc.

Examples:

\[ 'Ia tāpe'a maita'i ona 'i teie tao'a. \quad \text{May he look after this present.} \]
\[ 'Ia tāpū 'oia 'i te vahie. \quad \text{May he cut the wood.} \]

\( 'Eiaha forms the negative, as with the preceding two forms. \)

Example:

\[ 'Eiaha 'oia 'ia pa'imi 'i te pua'a. \quad \text{May he not seek the pigs.} \]
91. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. A tāpū 'i te vahie. 2. A hi'o na! 3. 'Eiaha 'e ta'i. 4. 'Ia here rātou 'i te pōti'i. 5. 'Eiaha 'e ău 'i teie vāhi. 6. A parahi. 7. A ti'a. 8. 'Eiaha 'e rave 'i te tipi. 9. 'Eiaha 'e pafa'i 'i te 'aute. 10. 'Ia ho'i mai 'oe 'i te hora pae.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. Eat those yams. 2. Do not hit the dog. 3. Give me that book. 4. May they (pl.) be happy! 5. Do not run fast. 6. Go and get some fish at the market. 7. Grate the coconut. 8. Do not forget to get the theatre tickets. 9. Let us (dl inc.) go and get the boat this afternoon. 10. Let us (pl. inc.) prepare for the arrival of the Governor.

92. Arrival in Tahiti

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te tahua taura'a manureva</td>
<td>the airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te taiete</td>
<td>the society, company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te horo patete</td>
<td>the passenger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te vāhi fa'ari'ira'a</td>
<td>the reception area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te rātere</td>
<td>the tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ātea</td>
<td>distant, far away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oia ho'i</td>
<td>namely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>U.S.A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farāni</td>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niu Terani</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te haere mai nei</td>
<td>who approaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tauha'a</td>
<td>the baggage, suitcase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pere'o'o</td>
<td>the taxi, car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te hotera</td>
<td>the hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āni</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'e nehenehe anei tū 'oe 'e</td>
<td>can you take me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rave 'ia'u?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o</td>
<td>the taxi driver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'afa'i</td>
<td>to transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'a'ite</td>
<td>to tell, explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'ahoro</td>
<td>to convey, drive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tei hea?</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hava'i</td>
<td>to put, deposit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:
'I teie taima te tae nei tātou 'i te tahua taura'a manureva nō Tahiti Fa'a'a. 'I te hora hitu e te āfa te tae mai nei te manureva UTA nō te
taiete Farāni 'i te taura'a manureva nō Tahiti Fa'a'a. 'I teie taime te haere mai nei te mau horo patete nō te manureva UTA 'i roto 'i te vāhi fa’ari’ira’a nō te mau rātere. Te 'ite nei au 'e raverahi mau rātere nō te mau fenua ātea mai, 'oia ho'i, nō te fenua Farāni, nō te fenua Marite mai, nō te fenua Europa mai, e nō te fenua Niu Terani 'ato'a.  
Te 'ite nei vau 'i te hō'e ta'ata te haere mai nei e tāna mau tauiha'a. Te hina'aro nei 'oia 'e rave 'i te hō'e pere'o'o nō te haere 'i tōna hotera. Te āni nei teie ta'ata rātere 'i te hō'e ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o nō te 'afa'i ātu 'īāna 'i te 'oire, te vāhi tei reira tōna hotera. Te āni nei 'oia 'i teie ta'ata-fa'ahoro-pere'o'o:

"A fa'a'ite mai na 'oe 'ia'u, 'e nehe nehe anei tā 'oe 'e rave 'ia'u nō te fa'ahoro ātu 'i te hotera?"

"E, 'e nehe nehe roa, 'e haere tāua. Tei hea tō 'oe mau tauiha'a?"

"Teie, 'e nehe nehe tā 'oe 'e rave."

"'E hava'i vau 'i roto 'i te pere'o'o, 'e haere tāua 'i tō 'oe hotera 'i Pape'ete."
93. Yes?, No?

For questions expecting the answer "yes" or "no", the interrogative marker is *anei*, which immediately follows the verb in affirmative sentences. The word order is:

verb + interrogative + subject

Examples:

'Ua 'āu *anei* 'ona 'inanahi ra?
Did he swim yesterday?

'Ua hohoni hia *anei* te *ta'ata* 'e te 'uri?
Was the man bitten by the dog?

*Te ta'oto* nei *anei* 'o Teri'i?
Is Terii sleeping?

'E ta'urua *anei* tō 'ananahi?
Will there be a feast tomorrow?

'E mea 'uo'u'o *anei* tēra manu?
Is that bird white?

It should be noted that *anei*, although following the verb, is preceded by adverbs or directionals whenever they occur. Example:

'Ua horo 'oi'oi mai *anei* 'oe?
Did you run here fast?

With the negative interrogative "did you not?", the word order is the same as for any negative sentence, *anei* following the negative particle to give the following formula:

negative + *anei* + subject + verb

Examples:

'Aita *anei* 'oe 'i ta'i'ri 'iūna?
Did you not hit him?

'Aita *anei* te mau feiā tu'e-popo nō Rai'ātea 'i tae mai?
Didn't the footballers from Raiatea arrive?

'E 'ere *anei* 'i tō 'oe mana'o?
Is it not your idea?
94. Interrogative Subject

There are three methods of asking the question "who?" or "what?" in Tahitian, as follows:

(i) 'o vai + noun or pronoun (who?)
   'e aha + noun or pronoun (what?)

Examples:

'O vai tēra ta'ata?  Who is that man?
'O vai 'oia?  Who is he?
'O vai 'o* 'oe?  Who are you?
'O vai mā taua feīa ra?  Who are those people?
'E aha tēra tumu rā'au?  What is that tree?

(ii) 'o vai + noun + [tei]

With verbal interrogative sentences, there remains the same interrogative, 'o vai, plus the relative particle tei or te. Te is used with verbs in the present continuous or future tense, while tei is used elsewhere. Examples:

'O vai tei 'ite 'i te 'āu?  Who knows how to swim?
'O vai tei horo'a ātu 'i te puta nā 'oe?  Who gave you the book?

With present and future tense, te may be replaced by 'e in conversation. Examples:

'O vai te vahine tei tumu 'i te ūfi?  Which woman prepared the yams?
'O vai te ta'ata tei horo'a hia te puta 'e te tavana?  Which person was given the book by the chief?

(iii) nā vai + 'i + verb

This interrogative form translates literally "by whom?", but serves the same purpose as 'o vai above. This form, however, is used only with transitive verbs. Examples:

Nā vai 'i rave tā'u peni-pāpa'i?  Who took my ballpoint pen?

* Cf. §11, the third usage of 'o.
† Cf. §47, second footnote.
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

78

Nā vai 'i horo'a ātu 'i tāna 'ava'ava?
Who gave him his cigarettes?

95. Interrogative Non-Subject
The non-subject interrogatives ask such questions as "whom?" "which?" "to whom?" "whose?" "by whom?"

(i) 'o vai + possessive adjective (whom?)
    tehia + noun (which?)
Examples:
'O vai tā 'oe 'ite ra?
    Whom do you see?
'O vai tā 'oe 'i horo'a ātu 'i te puta?
    To whom did you give the book?
(It should be observed that the possessive adjective always takes the
    tā form, and that 'e indicates present or future tense, while 'i in-
    dicates past tense.)
'O vai tā rātou 'e here?
    Whom do they like?
'O vai tā te tavana 'e here?
    Whom does the chief like?
Tehia tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?
    Which one do you want?
Tehia piripou tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?
    Which trousers do you want?

(ii) 'ia vai (to whom?)
    'i tehia ta'ata (to which person?)
Examples:
'Ua horo'a hia 'ia vai ra te puta?
    To whom was the book given?
'Ua horo'a 'oe 'i te puta 'ia vai ra?
    To whom did you give the book?
'Ua horo'a 'oe 'i te puta 'i tehia ta'ata?
    To which person did you give the book?

(iii) nō vai; nā vai
    nō tehia ta'ata; nā tehia ta'ata
    'ō tō vai; 'ō tā vai
    (whose?)
    (whose?)
    (whose is?)
Examples:
Nō vai tēra va'a?
    Whose is that canoe?
Nā vai tēra puta?
    Whose is that book?
This is the most common form of “whose?” in conversational Tahitian, the choice of nō or nä being determined by the same rules as for possessive adjectives (cf. §36).

*Nō tehia ta'ata te piripou nei?*
Whose are these trousers?
*Nā tehia ta'ata te puta nei?*
Whose is this book?
(Lit. of which person is this book?)
'O tō vai te va'a maita'i ā'e?
Whose is the best canoe?
'O ā vai te fa'a'apu rahi ā'e?
Whose is the biggest plantation?

This last form ('ō tō vai; 'ō ā vai) is used best to translate “who has the . . .”, rather than “whose is . . .”, and is used only with this connotation.

(iv) 'ē vai (by whom?)
'ē tehia ta'ata (by which person?)

Examples:

'Ua rave hia tō 'oe tōūpo'o 'ē vai?
By whom was your hat stolen?
'Ua horo'a hia 'ē tehia ta'ata?
By whom was it given?

These forms are used only with the verb in the passive voice.

(v) ʻi ō vai (to, at whose place?)

Example:

'Ua haere ʻoe ʻi ō vai mā?
To whose place did you go?
'Ua haere vaʻau ʻi ō Teriʻi mā.
I went to Terii’s place.

Note that mā follows vai when a plurality is implied or suspected. (See §13 for the usage of mā.)

95. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. ʻE mea ʻuoʻuo anei tēra manu?  2. ʻE āu anei ʻoia ʻananahi?
(b) Translate into Tahitian:

97. The Post Office

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te fare rata</td>
<td>the post office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te rätere</td>
<td>the tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hapono</td>
<td>to send, post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te rata</td>
<td>the letter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te afata tauiha'a</td>
<td>the parcel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomo</td>
<td>to enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ite</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>äni</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'e mea nafea?</td>
<td>how?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'e aha te huru?</td>
<td>how are things?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'eiaha 'e rü</td>
<td>don't panic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faito</td>
<td>to weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hi'o</td>
<td>to observe, see</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:

'I teie po'ipo'i 'ua haere te hō'e rätere 'i te fare rata nō te hapono 'i tāna rata 'i te femua Marite e tāna 'ato'a afata tauiha'a. 'I teie taimo nei 'ona 'i roto 'i te fare rata. Te 'ite nei 'oia 'i te hō'e pōti'i purotu nō te fare rata. 'I teie nei te äni ra 'oia 'i tāua pōti'i ra 'e mea nafea 'ia hapono 'i tāna rata e tāna afata tauiha'a.

"Ia ora na 'oe 'e teie pōti'i purotu. 'E aha te huru 'i teie po'ipo'i?"

"Maita'i roa. 'E aha tā 'oe 'e haere mai nei?"

"Te haere mai nei vau nō te hapono 'i tā'u nau rata 'e piti e tā'u afata tauiha'a 'i te femua Marite."

"'Eiaha 'e rü, 'e faito vau 'i tā 'oe nau rata nā mua. A horo'a mai tā 'oe nau rata. Nō teie 'e piti nau rata 'e toru 'ahuru ma piti farāne. 'E mea hapono 'ato'a teie afata tā 'oe?"

"E, 'e mea hapono 'ato'a 'i te femua Marite."

"Ahiri, a horo'a mai 'e faito vau. 'E piti tiro teie afata tā 'oe, 'e hō'e hanere tāra e maka 'ahuru te moni nō teie afata nō te haponora'a nā ni'a 'i te manureva."

"Maurūru 'i'a 'oe 'e teie pōti'i purotu. Te 'oa'oa nei au nō te mea 'i tō'u haerera'a mai 'i roto 'i teie fare rata, 'i'a hi'o vau 'o 'oe āna'e te pōti'i purotu roa."
Lesson 19

THE INTERROGATIVE II

This second lesson on the Tahitian interrogatives deals with the questions “why?”, “where?”, “when?”, “how?”, “what?”

98. Why?

There are three ways of asking the question “why?”, as follows:

(i) nō te aha ... ai

Examples:

Nō te aha 'oe 'i horo'a ātu ai 'i te puta 'iāna?
Why did you give him the book?
Nō te aha 'ona 'i maoro ai 'i tāna 'ohipa 'inanahi?
Why was he late for work yesterday?
Nō te aha te fenua 'i haumi ai?
Why is the ground wet?

Note that non-verbal sentences become verbalised when the question “why?” is asked, and that the directional ai always follows the verb.

(ii) 'e aha ... ai

This form is exactly the same as the last, but more colloquial.
Examples:

'E aha 'oe 'e āu ai?
Why are you swimming?
'E aha iera ta'ata 'i parahi noa ai?
Why is that man still sitting down?

(iii) 'e aha te tumu ... ai

This form asks “for what reason?” Example:

'E aha te tumu rātou 'i tae mai ai 'i 'onei?
Why have they come here?
With the negative interrogative, "why not?", there is a special construction, as follows:

interrogative . . . 'ore ai 'e + verb

Examples:
No te aha 'oe 'e 'ore ai 'e 'āu?
Why don't you swim?
No te aha 'oe i 'ore ai 'e tunu 'i te mā'a?
Why didn't you prepare the food?

99. Where?
There are several methods of asking "where?" Each method will be explained in turn.

(i) tei hea + noun

This is the fixed formula for non-verbal sentences. Examples:
Tei hea te fare toa? Where is the shop?
Tei hea te poti'i? Where is the girl?

(ii) With verbal sentences, past tense, there are two constructions, although the same question marker is used.

\[
\left[ \begin{array}{c}
'i \text{ hea} \\
tei \text{ hea}
\end{array} \right] + 'i \text{ te} + \text{ verb} + -ra'a
\]

\[
\left[ \begin{array}{c}
'i \text{ hea} \\
tei \text{ hea}
\end{array} \right] + \text{ possessive adjective} + \text{ verb} + -ra'a
\]

Examples:
'I hea 'ona 'i te 'āura'a 'inanahi?
Where did he swim yesterday?
'I hea 'ona 'i te tahumara'a 'i te puta?
Where did he hide the book?
'I hea tōna 'āura'a 'inanahi ra?
Where did he swim yesterday?
'I hea tō 'oe vaihora'a 'i te puta?
Where did you put the book?
'I hea tō te vahine vaihora'a 'i te puta?
Where did the woman put the book?

It should be noted that the tō form of the possessive adjective is used, and that the two constructions above may be used interchangeably.

(iii) With verbal sentences, future and present tense, there is a different construction:

\[
\left[ \begin{array}{c}
'i \text{ hea} \\
'ei \text{ hea}
\end{array} \right] + \text{ subject} + 'e + \text{ verb} \ldots ai
\]
Examples:

'Ei hea 'o 'oe 'e tāmā'a ai 'i teie pō?
Where will you eat tonight?
'I hea 'ona 'e 'āu ai?
Where will he swim?

(iv) Where to?
This question is indicated simply by placing 'i hea after the verb. Example:

'e haere 'oe 'i hea?  Where are you going?

(v) Where from?
This question is usually asked in a non-verbal way. Thus:

Mai hea mai 'oe?  Where do you come from?
Or: Nō hea tēra pahi?  Where is that boat from?

100. When?
There are three methods of asking the question “when?” in Tahitian.

(i) \[
\begin{align*}
\text{afea} \\
\text{ahēa} \\
\text{anafe}a
\end{align*}
\] + future tense + ai

Any of these three question markers may be used without distinction. Examples:

Anafe'a 'oia 'e reva ai?  When will he leave?
Afe'a rātou 'e ta'oto ai?  When will they sleep?
Afe'a 'o 'oe 'e ho'i mai ai?  When will you come back?

(ii) \[
\begin{align*}
\text{inafe}a \\
'i \text{ anafe}a
\end{align*}
\] + past tense + ai

Either of these question markers may be used without distinction. Example:

'I anafe'a 'oia 'i reva ātu ai?.  When did he leave?
Note that with the past tense, the nominalised form of the verb is also used, as in:

Inafe'a tō 'oe haerera'a 'e tāi'a?
When did you go fishing?

In such cases, the tō form of the possessive adjective is used, as in §99.

(iii) 'e aha te taine . . . ai
This is a general interrogative and may be used without tense distinction. Example:

'E aha te taine 'ona 'i ta'iri ai 'i te 'uri?
When did he hit the dog?
101. How?

There are two methods of asking “how?” in Tahitian, as follows:

(i) \[
\begin{align*}
&'ua \ nafea \\
&'e \ nafea \\
te \ nafea \ ra
\end{align*}
\] + subject + 'i te + verb

The form with 'ua indicates past tense, with 'e the future, and with te . . . ra the present. Examples:

'E mea nafea "i te rave?
How did they do it?
'E mea nafea "i te hamani "i te fare?
How did they build the house?
'E mea nafea "i te rave?
How will they do it?
'E mea nafea "i te hamanira'a* "i te fare?
How will they build the house?
Te nafea ra 'oe "i te hamanira'a "i te fare?
How are you building the house?

(ii) \[
\begin{align*}
&'e \ mea \ nafea \\
&'e \ nafea \\
te \ nafea \ ra
\end{align*}
\] + subject + verb + -ra'a

'E mea nafea indicates past tense, while 'e nafea and te nafea ra are as explained in §101(i).

The use of tō and tā is important. When the tō form is used the nuance of the question is “how did you manage to?”, while the tā form is more direct, and expects an answer of the type “with an axe, with a hammer”. Examples:

' E mea nafea tā rātou raver'a?
How did they do it?
'E mea nafea tā rātou hamanira'a 'i te fare?
How did they build the house?
'E mea nafea tā rātou raver'a?
How will they do it?
Te nafea ra tō 'oe hamanira'a 'i te fare?
How are you building the house?

102. What?

With non-verbal sentences, “what?” is translated by 'e aha plus noun, pronoun, or demonstrative. Examples:

'E aha tēra? What is that?
'E aha tēra tumu rā'au? What is that tree?

* The -ra'a form is often used when the direct object of the verb is stated.
With verbal sentences, the form is 'e aha plus possessive adjective plus verb. Examples:

'E aha tā 'oe 'e rave ra?
What are you doing there?

'E aha tā 'oe 'e hi'o ra?
What are you looking at there?

'E aha tā 'oe 'i 'ite 'inanahi ra?
What did you see yesterday?

'E aha tā 'oe 'e 'ite 'ananahi?
What will you see tomorrow?

There is an idiomatic expression for "what are you doing?'", "how will you be fixed?" etc. as follows:

'Te aha na 'oe?
What are you doing?

'I aha na 'oe?
How were you?

'E aha 'oe 'ananahi?
How will you be fixed?

Also:

'E aha tō 'oe?
What's the matter with you?

'E aha tōna?
What's the matter with him?

"What with?", is rendered by 'i te aha? Example:

'Ua ta'irī 'oia 'i te aha?
What did he hit it with?

"By what?" is translated by 'e te aha? Example:

'Ua pātiā hia 'oe 'e te aha?
By what were you pricked?

103. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. Nō te aha rātou 'e āu ai?
2. Nō te aha 'ona 'i ta'iri ai 'i te 'uri?
3. Nō te aha te 'uri 'i taparahi hia ai?
4. Tei hea tōna vaihora'a 'i te puta?
5. 'E haere te vahine 'i hea?
6. 'E haere 'o 'oe ihea 'i teie nei?
7. 'E aha tā tātou 'ohipa 'i teie pō?
8. Inafea 'oia 'i horo'a ātu ai 'i te puta?
9. 'E mea nāfe a tā rātou hamanira'a 'i te va'a?
10. 'E aha tā 'outou 'e 'amu ra?

(b) Translate into Tahitian:

104. Conversation

Vocabulary:

'i hea?
where?

ho'o mai
to buy

noa
only, always
te fē'i
the red bananas

conver-
te 'umara
tahitian
the sweet potato
tefifī
tahitian
the yam
ri'i
a little
afae?
when?
'e riro paha
perhaps

the duration, length
te maorora'a
nō te mea
the yam

ri
a little
teho

pāpa'i
the friend
mai te mea
if, whether
hina'aro
to want
fa'a'afa'aea
to remain, stay
'e nehe

maunā
to conclude, end
're roa tā maua
paraparau
to talk, chat
tia'i
to wait
te vahine-fa'aipoipo
the wife
tunu
to prepare
te mā'a
the food
'i teie mahāna
now, today

Translate:
"'I hea 'oe 'i teie mahāna?"

"'Ua haere au 'i te mātete 'e ho'o mai 'i te ī'a. 'Ua tae vau 'i te mātete, 'aita 'e i'a. 'Ua rave noa mai vau 'i te mau fē'i, te 'umura, te īfī. E 'o 'oe, 'i hea 'oe 'i teie mahāna?"

"'Ua haere vau 'e āu nō te mea 'aita tā'u 'e 'ohipa 'i teie mahāna. 'Ua mana'o vau 'e haere 'e āu rī'i. Afe'a 'outou 'e haere ai 'i Ra'iātea?"

"Te mana'o nei vau 'e riro paha 'i teie hepetoma 'i mua nei. 'Ei reira mātou 'e haere ātu ai 'i Ra'iātea. Te maorora'a 'e riro paha 'e piti 'aore ra 'e toru 'ava'e. 'E 'outou? 'E haere 'outou 'i hea 'i teie maua mahāna 'i mua nei?"

"Te mana'o nei maua 'e haere ātu 'i te mau motu Matuita mā, nō te mea te vai ra te tahi mau hoa tō maua 'o tei pāpa'i mai, mai te mea 'e hina'aro māua 'i te haere 'e fa'a'afa'aea te tahi maua mahāna 'i Matuita. 'E nehe neha roa tā maua 'e reva ātu 'i te fenua Matuita."

"I teie taime te mana'o nei vau 'ua tae 'i te hora nō te haerera'a 'e āu. Nō reira, te hina'aro nei vau 'e fa'aoti 'i tā tāua paraparaua'a. Te mana'o 'ato'a nei vau ē, te tia'i noa mai ra tō 'oe vahine fa'aipoipo 'i te fare nō te tumu 'i te mā'a. 'E tūmā'a maita'i ia 'ōrua 'i teie mahāna."
Lesson 20

DEPENDENT SENTENCES I

105. Dependent Subject

The first type of dependent sentence to be explained is what is often called "the relative clause or sentence", of the type "I saw the man who took the book".

There are several constructions in Tahitian, dependent on tense, and on whether the verb in the dependent clause describes an action or a state.

(i) With sentences beginning with "it is they who . . .", "it is you who . . .", etc., the relative pronouns are tei (past tense) and te (future tense and present continuous). Examples:

'O vau te taora 'i te 'ofa'i.
It is I who will throw stones.
'O vau tei taora 'i te 'ofa'i 'inanahi ra.
It is I who threw stones yesterday.
'O vau te parau nei.
It is I who am speaking.

(ii) With sentences beginning with "I saw the man who . . .", "I saw the dog that . . .", in other words, when the main clause contains a verb in Tahitian, the construction used depends on the tense of the dependent clause.

When the verb of the dependent clause is in the present or past continuous, the forms are:

'e + verb + nei (present)
'e + verb + ra (past)

In this case, nei indicates proximity to the speaker, while ra indicates that the action takes place further away. Examples:

Te 'ite ra vau 'i hō'e vahine 'e 'aũ ra.
I saw a woman who was swimming.
A hi'o na 'oe 'i te mau manu 'e ma'u nei.
Look at the birds which are flying.
When the verb of the dependent clause is in the past tense, there are two possibilities. If a completed action is described, then ‘o tei is the relative pronoun used. Example:

‘E a‘o ‘oe ‘i te tamaiti ‘o tei taora mai ‘i te ‘ofa‘i.

You will correct the boy who threw the stone.

If the action described in the dependent clause is a state, rather than an action, such as “I saw the boy throwing a stone” as opposed to “I saw the boy who threw the stone”, then the following construction is used:

... ‘i te + verb + ra‘a

Examples:

‘Ua ‘ite au ‘i te hō‘e ta‘ata ‘i te tāpūra‘a ‘i te vahie.
I saw the man cutting the wood.

‘Ua ‘ite au ‘i te hō‘e ta‘ata ‘i te horo‘ara‘a ‘i te mā‘a nā te ‘uri.
I saw a man giving food to the dog.

Te fa‘aro‘o nei au ‘i te ‘aiū ‘i te ta‘ira‘a.
I hear the baby crying.

When the verb of the dependent clause is in the future tense, the relative pronoun ‘o te is used. Examples:

Te ta‘ata ‘o te ‘ia ‘e fa‘ahapa hia ‘oia ‘e te ture.
The person who steals will be punished by the law.

‘O vai ‘o te paraparau nō te ha‘amaurūrū‘a‘a ‘i te mau manihini?
Who will speak to thank the guests?

(iii) When the verb of the dependent clause is in the passive voice, there are two possibilities, tei or ‘i, for the past, and also two, te or ‘e, for the future tense or present continuous. Examples:

‘Ua inu vau ‘i te rā‘au tei horo‘a hia nā te pōti‘i.
I drank the medicine that was given to the girl.

‘Ua ‘ite vau ‘i te tao‘a te horo‘a hia nā te tavana.
I have seen the present that will be given to the chief.

It should be noted that ‘o tei, ‘o te may be replaced by tei, te without distinction.

106. Dependent Non-subject

This type of dependent clause is the one in which the subject is not the actor, as was the case in §105. It is found in sentences of the type “the man whom we . . . .” The relative pronoun, in this case, is replaced by the possessive adjective tā or ‘o tā plus noun or pronoun. To the verb is added ‘i for past tense, ‘e for present or future. Examples:

‘E inu vau ‘i te pia tā‘u ‘e āu maita‘i.
I shall drink the beer that I like.
DEPENDENT SENTENCES I

'Ia 'ite au 'i te tao'a tā rātou 'i horo'a ātu nā te tavana.
I saw the gift they gave to the chief.

'Ia 'ite au 'i te tao'a tā te vahine 'i horo'a ātu 'i te tavana.
I saw the gift that the woman gave to the chief.

It should be noted that the English “to whom was given”, etc., is translated in Tahitian by “who was given”, similar in structure to the dependent clauses of §105(iii). Example:

'Ia 'ite au 'i te ari 'i o tei horo'a hia te maro 'ura.
I saw the king to whom the red belt was given.

(Lit. I saw the king who was given the red belt)

As was stated above, the student of Tahitian must consider Tahitian in its own terms if he is to think in Tahitian and not simply translate literally from his own mother tongue.

This form is used mainly when the verb of the main clause is in the passive voice. Either 'e or nā may be used to indicate the agent. Example:

'Ia tāpe'a hia 'oia nā tei tapapa mai 'iāna.
He was stopped by the person who pursued him.

107. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:
1. 'O 'outou tei ta'iri 'ia'u 'inanahi ra. 2. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te hō'e ta'ata 'i te hamamira'a 'i te fare. 3. 'E ho'o mai vau 'i te 'uri 'o te horo'a hia nā rātou. 4. Tēra te fare tā'u 'e hina'aro. 5. Tēra te 'uri tā rātou 'i ho'o mai. 6. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te tāmata tei haman i 'i ēra fare. 7. 'Ua haere vau 'e rave mai 'i te pua'a 'o te tu'a'i hia nō te fa'aipoipora'a. 8. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te ta'ata 'o te pa'imi hia ra 'e te mau muto'i. 9. 'Ua 'ite hia 'e au te moni tā 'oe 'i mo'e. 10. 'E mea āu roa nā'u te pere'o'o tāna 'i ho'o mai.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. It is you (pl.) who will build the boat. 2. I saw the man who hit your dog. 3. This is the girl who planted the flowers. 4. That is the girl whom we (pl. inc.) saw. 5. This is the letter that the chief wrote. 6. The person who wrote this book has left. 7. I met the girl who was married yesterday. 8. I saw Moana planting a coconut tree. 9. I went and watched my wife swimming. 10. It is they (dl) who went fishing for crayfish.
108. Visit to the Shops

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fa'a'ite</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te haerera'a</td>
<td>the visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fare toa</td>
<td>the shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ho'o-haere</td>
<td>to shop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tauiha'a</td>
<td>the purchase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hina'aro</td>
<td>to want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomo</td>
<td>to enter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āni</td>
<td>to ask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tamāhine-ho'oho'o</td>
<td>the shop assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horo'a</td>
<td>to give</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te piripou</td>
<td>the trousers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ninamu</td>
<td>blue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ehia moni?</td>
<td>how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tāra</td>
<td>5 francs CFP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tehia?</td>
<td>which one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aufau</td>
<td>to pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'ahu 'o'omo</td>
<td>the shirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'eiaha 'e rū!</td>
<td>don't rush!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti'i</td>
<td>to get, collect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rave</td>
<td>to take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pu'ohu</td>
<td>to wrap up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fa'ari'i</td>
<td>the paper bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maurūru</td>
<td>to thank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'amaramarama</td>
<td>to explain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te moni-ho'o</td>
<td>the price</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:

'I teie nei, teie te tahi mau parau fa'a'itera'a nō te haere 'i roto 'i te fare toa. 'I teie taime te haere nei tātou 'i roto 'i te hō'e fare toa nō te ho'o-haere 'i te mau tauiha'a tā tātou 'e hina'aro.
'I teie taime te tomo nei ia vau 'i roto 'i te fare toa, e te āni nei vau 'i teie tamāhine-ho'oho'o 'i roto 'i te fare toa:

"Te hina'aro nei vau 'i te hō'e piripou maita'i nō'u." 
Te āni nei vau 'iāna, 'e horo'a mai iēra piripou ninamu. Te horo'a mai nei 'ona 'i teie taime.

"'Ehia moni 'i iēra piripou?"

"'E piti hanere tāra e pae hanere. Tehia tā 'oe 'e hina'aro?"

"'E hina'aro vau 'i iēra mea ninamu. 'Ehia moni?"

"'E piti hanere tāra."

"A horo'a mai iēra mea ninamu."

'Ua horo'a mai 'ona, e 'ua rave vau. 'Ua 'aufau vau 'i te moni 'e piti hanere tāra.
"Tera tā 'oe moni. 'E horo'a 'ato'a mai 'oe 'i tēra 'ahu haviti 'i 'o 'i tēra vāhi tā'u 'e 'ite nei. A horo'a mai na."

"'Eiaha 'e rū, 'e haere vau 'e ti'i. Tēra tā 'oe 'ahu. 'E hina'aro?"

"E, 'e hina'aro ihoa vau 'i tēra 'ahu. Fa'a'ite mai 'oe 'ia'u 'ehia moni."

"Teie te moni 'o tēra 'ahu. Hō'e hānere tāra e toru 'ahuru."

"'E ere 'i te mea moni roa. 'E rave vau. A pu'ohu mai 'oe 'i te piripou e te 'ahu 'i te roto 'i te tahi fa'ari'i. E, tēra mai te moni nō te 'ahu e te piripou.

"Te haere nei vau e maurūru roa 'ia 'oe, 'i te horo'ara'a mai 'i te mau parau ha'amaramarama nō ni'a 'i te mau moni-ho'o nō te 'ahu e te mau piripou nō te fare toa nei."
Lesson 21

DEPENDENT SENTENCES II

This type of dependent clause follows, for example, “I know”, where the dependent clause is of the type “why he broke the window”, “when he is coming”.*

109. Why

“Why”, introducing a dependent clause, is rendered by nō te aha in Tahitian. Examples:

'Ua 'ite au nō te aha 'oia 'i haere ai 'e 'āu.
I know why he went swimming.

'Hua 'ite au nō te aha 'oia 'i hohoni hia 'e te ma'o.
I know why he was bitten by the shark.

110. When

When the dependent clause precedes the main clause, “when” is 'ia in Tahitian. Examples:

'Ia oti tä rātou pafa'ira'a 'anani, 'e pou mai rātou.
When their orange harvest is finished, they descend.

'Ia marū te mata'i, 'e haere ai tāua 'e tāi'a.
When the wind has dropped, we will go fishing.

'Ia te tavana 'i reva ātu, te paraparau noa ra ia te mau ta'ata.
When the chief left, people were still talking.

'Ia u parau, te parau 'ato'a ra 'oia.
When I spoke, he was talking also.

Note that with this construction the object form of the pronoun is used to indicate the subject.

When the dependent clause is of the type which usually follows the main clause, there are two possible constructions:

* In strict linguistic terms, some of the clauses dealt with in this lesson would be considered to be types of complements, but, as they have similar structure patterns to the strict dependent clauses, (for pedagogical reasons) they are considered as such and will be all treated in this one lesson.
(i) \[
\begin{align*}
&'i\text{ te mahāna} \\
&'e\text{ aha te taimē}
\end{align*}
\] + subject + verb

Examples:
'Alita roa vau 'i 'ite 'i te mahāna 'oia 'e tae mai ai.
I do not know when he will arrive.
'Alita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha te taimē 'oia 'o ho'i mai ai.
I do not know when he will return.

(ii) 'i te mahāna + nō + verb + ra'a

Example:
'Alita vau 'i 'ite 'i te mahāna nō íona taera'a mai.
I do not know when he will return.

111. While, When

"While" is translated in Tahitian by the particle 'a in the place of the ordinary tense markers. Examples:
'I teie taimē 'a pāpara pā rau vau nā rōto 'i te reo 'o Radio Tahiti, 

'te 'ite nei vau 'i te ho'e ta'ata.

At this moment while I speak on Radio Tahiti, I see a man.
'i te 'ava'e 'a pohe ai 'oia

in the month when he died

When two actions are performed simultaneously, ma te + verb is generally used to denote "at the same time as". Examples:
'Ua ori haere 'oia ma te inu 'i te pape.

He walked along drinking water.
Te ori haere ra 'oia ma te hi'o 'i muri.

He was walking along looking behind him.

When the second verb is thought of as a verb of motion, the formula mai te + verb + mai is used. Examples:
'E pou mai rātou 'i raro mai te āmo mai 'i te 'anani.

They descend bearing the oranges.
Te haere pauroa te mau hui ra'atira mai te tāmou mai 'i te hei 'i ni'a 'i te ūpo'o.

The people come wearing crowns of flowers on their heads.

112. How

"How" is rendered in Tahitian by:

(i) Past: 'e mea nafea + possessive adjective + verb + ra'a

(ii) Future: 'e nafea + subject + 'i te + verb
Examples:

'Ua 'ite au 'e mea nafea tōna fa'afanaura' a 'i tā'u vahine.
I know how he prepared for my wife's confinement.

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e nafea 'ona 'i te hamani 'i tōna fare.
I do not know how he will build his house.

113. What

'Eaha + possessive adjective + verb translates "what" in dependent clauses such as:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha tāna 'e rave nei.
I do not know what he is doing.

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e aha tāna 'ohipa 'inanahi ra.
I do not know what he was doing yesterday.

114. Whether

"Whether" is indicated in Tahitian by anei following the verb of the dependent clause. Examples:

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e hohoni hia anei 'oia 'e te ma'o.
I do not know if he will be bitten by a shark.

'Aita vau 'i 'ite 'e haere mai anei 'oia 'ananahi.
I do not know if he will come tomorrow.

115. That

Ē (that), at the end of the main clause, introduces the dependent clause after verbs of knowing. Examples:

'Ua 'ite au ē 'ua reva ātu 'oia 'inanahi ra.
I know that he left yesterday.

'Ua 'ite au ē 'e ma'i tō tēra ta'ata.
I know that that man is sick.

With verbs of saying, however, the ē is frequently omitted. Example:

'Ua parau vau 'e haere mai te tavāna.
I said that the chief will come.

116. Since

There are two constructions which translate "since". They are as follows:

(i) mai te mahāna + subject + 'a . . .

This construction is used when the subject precedes the verb in the dependent clause. Example:

Mai te mahāna vau 'a tae mai ai 'i Tahiti, 'aita te fare 'i taui.
Since I have arrived back in Tahiti, the house has not changed.
(ii) mai te mahāna 'i + verb + subject

This is used when the subject follows the verb in the dependent clause. Example:

*maite mahāna 'i re va ātu ai 'oe ...*

since you left ...

The choice of construction rests with the individual.

117. Where

There are two non-interrogative forms for “where”.

(i) where there is/are ...

This is translated in Tahitian by *tei reira* followed by a noun.

Examples:

*te fa'a tei reira te 'anani*

the valley where the oranges are

*te vāhi tei reira te hotera*

the place where the hotel is

(ii) where + verb

In Tahitian there are two possible constructions to express “where” in a dependent clause; either verb + subject + 'i hea, or 'i te vāhi + possessive adjective. Examples:

'Aita vau 'i ite 'ua haere 'oia 'i hea.

I do not know where he went.

'Aita vau 'i ite 'e haere ra 'oia 'i hea.

I do not know where he is going.

Or: 'Aita vau 'i ite 'i te vāhi tāna 'i haere.

I do not know where he went.

'Ua ite vau 'i te vāhi tāna 'e haere ra.

I know where he is going.

But: 'Aita vau 'i ite 'i te vāhi 'e haere ai 'oia.

I do not know where he will go.

With future tense, the normal verbal construction plus ai is reverted to.

118. Exercise

(a) Translate into English:

1. 'Aita vau 'i ite 'i te mahāna rātou 'i tae mai ai. 2. 'Ua 'au 'outou ma te inu 'i te pia. 3. 'Aita rātou 'i ite nō te aha 'oia 'i ta'i ai. 4. 'Ua ite au nō te aha 'oia 'i mā'iti hia ai 'ei tavana. 5. Te parau ra te ta'ata ra, 'e ta'ata maita'i 'o 'oe. 6. 'Aita tātou 'i ite 'e aha te taine 'oia 'e ho'i mai ai. 7. 'Aita vau 'i ite 'e mea nafe'a 'i roa'ā ai tāna pua'a. 8. 'Aita 'oia 'i ite 'e haere mai anei rātou. 9. 'E mana'o vau 'ā 'e 'ite 'oe 'i tā'u rata. 10. 'Ua mana'o vau 'ā 'ua re va ātu 'oe.
(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. I know when he left. 2. He walked along eating an orange. 3. I do not know why he broke the glass. 4. I know when he built the house. 5. They (pl.) do not know why he left. 6. They know what I did yesterday. 7. I see that you have written to me. 8. He said that you are bad. 9. I think that he is strong. 10. I know how the girl broke the window-pane.

119. Copra

Vocabulary:
- te pūha: the copra
- hamani: to make
- ha'aputu: to heap up
- te ha'ari: the coconut
- marō: dry
- tāpūpū: to cut in two
- te 'opa'a: the ripe coconut
- te to'i: the axe
- piharahara: to open up
- pana: to dig around, to scoop
- tatara: to remove, detach
- te mā'a: the food, the white of the coconut, the meat
- taura'i: to dry in the sun
- te maorora'a: the period, time
- mai te peu ē: if
- 'o'omo: to put in a bag
- te pūte: the sack, bag
- hopoi: to send, transport
- ho'o: to sell

Translate:
Te parau nō te pūha. Nō te hamani 'i te pūha 'e ha'aputu hia te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a. 'Ia oti, 'e tāpūpū hia te mau 'opa'a, 'oia ho'i te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a. 'E tāpu hia 'i te to'i. 'I muri iho, 'e piharahara hia te mau 'opa'a tei tāpūpū hia e, 'e pana pauroa hia te mau ha'ari nō te tatara mai 'i te mā'a. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e taura'i hia te mau mā'a 'ō te ha'ari, 'oia ho'i te pūha, 'i ni'a 'i te maahāna 'i te maorora'a 'e piti 'aore ra 'e toru hepetoma te maorora'a, mai te peu ē 'e mea maita'i te maahāna. 'Ia marō maita'i te pūha, 'e 'o'omo hia 'i roto 'i te mau pūte nō te hopoi ātu 'e ho'o.
Lesson 22

SPECIAL VERBAL FORMS

120. Reflexive

In Tahitian, the reflexive may be expressed in the following way:
verb + subject + object pronoun

With this construction, the reflexive pronoun follows the subject.

Examples:
'Ua ha'apohe 'oia 'iāna.
He killed himself.
(Lit. was kill he him)
'Ua horohōrōi vau 'ia'ū i teie po'ipo'i.
I washed myself this morning.

Some verbs in Tahitian are reflexive in sense, and do not require
the object pronoun. Examples:
'Ua mutu 'o Teri'i 'i tēra tipi.
Terii cut himself with that knife.
'Ua mutu vau 'i te tipi.
I cut myself with a knife.
'Ua hi'ohi'o vau 'i roto 'i te hi'o.
I looked at myself in the mirror.

121. Reciprocal

The reciprocal involves the repetition of the pronoun, followed by
iho. The sentence word order remains the same. Examples:
A moto 'outou 'outou iho!
Fight one another!
'E hina'aro vau 'ia tauturu rātou rātou iho.
I want them to help one another.
'E hina'aro vau 'ia tauturu iēra mau ta'ata 'ia rātou rātou iho.
I want these people to help one another.

122. Emphatic Pronoun

The emphatic pronoun consists of the ordinary subject pronoun +
iho (cf. §42). Example:
Nā'u iho 'i rave.
I did it myself.
CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN

123. Ability/Inability
This form translates "can", "able to". There are two main constructions:

(i) 'e nehenehe tā + [noun] 'e + verb
    (Lit. it is good my/your, etc. action)
Examples:
'E nehenehe tā'ū 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.
I can climb that tree.
'E nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e āmo mai 'i tēra pūte?
Can you carry that bag?
'E nehenehe tā tēra ta'ata 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.
The man can climb that tree.
'Ananahi 'e nehenehe tā'ū 'e haere 'e ōau.
Tomorrow I can go swimming.

(ii) 'e nehenehe 'iā + pronoun + 'i te + noun + 'iā + verb
This construction is more formal than the first, and not as widely used in conversation. Examples:
'E nehenehe 'iāna 'iā horo.
He can run.
'E nehenehe 'i tēra ta'ata 'iā rave mai 'i tā 'oe tauiha'a.
That person can bring your things.

(iii) 'e ti'a (plus same construction as in ii)
This construction is very formal and not much used in conversation. Example:
'E ti'a anei 'iā'u 'iā rave 'i teie ōpe?
Can I take this shovel?

(iv) When inability is expressed, the construction changes to:
    ['e'ita] + tā [noun] 'e nehenehe 'e + verb
Example:
'E'ita tā'ū 'e nehenehe 'e pa'uma 'i ni'a 'i tēra tumu rā'au.
I cannot climb that tree.
124. Competence/Incompetence
This construction corresponds to the English “to know how to”, “not to know how to”, as follows:

\[ {}'ua' \quad 'ite \ldots + 'i \ te + \text{verb} \]

Examples:

'Ua 'ite anei 'oe 'i te tunu 'i te āfī?
Do you know how to prepare yams?

'E, 'ua 'ite au 'i te tunu 'i te āfī.
Yes, I know how to prepare yams.

125. Attempted Action
This form corresponds to “try, attempt to”. The construction is as follows:

\[ {}'ua' \quad tāmata (try) \ldots 'i \ te + \text{verb} \]

Examples:

'E tāmata vau 'i te hamani 'i te fare.
I shall try to build a house.

'Inanahi ra 'ua tāmata vau 'i te hamani 'i te hō'e afata.
Yesterday I tried to make a box.

126. Exercise
(a) Translate into English:
1. Te hi'ohi'oi nei tāua tāua iho. 2. Te 'ite nei 'oia 'iāna 'i roto 'i te pape. 3. Nā rātou iho 'i ho'o mai 'i te farāaoa. 4. Nāna iho 'i ta'iri 'i te 'uri 'ā Peu. 5. 'Ananahi 'e tāmata vau 'i te haere 'e tā'ia. 6. 'Ua 'ite anei 'oe 'i te tunu 'i te āfī? 7. 'Ua 'ite rātou 'i te hamani 'i te fare. 8. 'E nehenehe tā'u 'e hamani 'i te fare. 9. 'E nehenehe anei 'oe 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i? 10. 'E'ita tā'u 'e nehenehe 'e rave 'i te 'ofa'i.

(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. They (pl.) are looking at one another. 2. Yesterday they (dl) washed each other. 3. That man hit Terii’s dog. 4. He will try to make a box. 5. I can lift the stone. 6. He cannot lift the stone. 7. Do you know how to build a house? 8. Can you (pl.) plant the yams? 9. Yes, we (pl. exc.) can certainly plant the yams. 10. We (pl. exc.) cannot plant the yams.
127. The Market

Vocabulary:

- **te mätete** - the market
- **i** - full, to fill
- **te mä’a** - the produce
- **rau** - to be numerous
- **te huru** - the kind, sort
- **fa’anaho** - to organise, place
- **matara** - to be open
- **’e tae ātu** - until
- **raverahi** - many
- **te mata’eina’a** - the district
- **ho’o** - to sell

**Translate:**

Te mätete nō Tahiti, ’e i noa ’oia 'i te mä’a. 'Ua rau te huru 'i te mau mahäna ’ato’a. Mai teie te huru te mau fa’anahora’a: ’e matara noa te mätete nō Pape’ete mai te monire ’e tae ātu ’i te tapati, mai te hora mahä 'i te po’ipo'i ’e tae ātu ’i te hora hitu ’i te pō. ’I te tapati ’e matara ’oia mai te hora mahä 'i te po’ipo'i ’e tae ātu ’i te hora ‘ahuru. ’E raverahi te mau mä’a ’e tae mai nō te mau mata’eina’a nō Tahiti. ’E tae ’ato’ā mai tō te mau motu, nō Mo’orea, Huahine, Ra’iātea, Borabora. Te mahäna rahì a’e te mä’a, ’i te mätete, mai te mahäna mahä ia ’e tae ātu ’i te tapati. Mai te monire ’e tae ātu ’i te mahäna toru, ‘aita ’e rahì te mä’a ’e tae mai ’i te mätete nō Pape’ete. ’E raverahi mau mä’a ’e ho’o hìa e te tahi mau tauiha’a nō te fenua. ’E raverahi te huru ’ō te mau ī’a. ’E ho’o ’ato’a hìa te mau hei-püpu, te mau ti’i, te mau tāupo’ō, te mau ēte.

’E raverahi mau rātere ’e haere ’i te mätete nō Pape’ete nō te mäta’ita’i te mau rahira’a mä’a e te ī’a; ’ua rau te huru ’ō te mau tauiha’a nō te fenua. Nō reira, ’ua riro ia te mätete nō Pape’ete ’ei ’oa’oara’a, ’ei maurūrura’a nā te mau rātere.
Lesson 23

DESIDERATIVE, NECESSITATIVE, CONDITIONAL

128. Desiderative

The desiderative is expressed in the following ways:

(i) \[
\begin{align*}
\text{[te} & \text{'}e\text{'ua hina'aro + subject + 'e + verb}
\end{align*}
\]

This is the construction used when the subject is the same for both verbs. Examples:

\begin{align*}
\text{Te hina'aro nei au 'e ho'o mai 'i te heipūpū.}\ast \\
\text{I want to buy a shell necklace.}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{'E hina'aro vau 'e tunu 'i te ūfi.}
\text{I want to prepare the yams.}
\end{align*}

(ii) \[
\begin{align*}
\text{[te} & \text{'}e\text{'ua hina'aro + subject + 'e} + \text{['}i\text{a} + \text{verb + subject}
\end{align*}
\]

This construction is used when the subject of the two verbs is different. Examples:

\begin{align*}
\text{Te hina'aro nei au 'e tauturu mai 'oe 'ia'u.}
\text{I want you to help me.}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{Te hina'aro nei 'oia 'ia hamani vau 'i te fare.}
\text{He wants me to build a house.}
\end{align*}

(iii) negative + subject + verb + \[
\begin{align*}
\text{[i te + verb (past)} & \text{'}e + \text{verb (present)}
\end{align*}
\]

In the negative, when the subject of both verbs is the same, the pattern changes to the above. Examples:

\begin{align*}
\text{'Aita vau 'i hina'aro 'i te haere.}
\text{I did not want to go.}
\end{align*}

\ast \text{Hina'aro is also used with a noun object, such as:}

\begin{align*}
\text{'E hina'aro vau 'i tēra hel-pūpū.}
\text{I would like that shell necklace.}
\end{align*}
'Aita vau 'i hina'aro 'i te haere 'e tai'a.
I did not want to go fishing.
'E'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'e haere 'e tai'a.
I do not want to go fishing.

Otherwise, the normal negative sentence pattern is followed. Example:
'E'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'ia ha'aparari 'oe 'i tā'u hapaina.
I do not want you to break my glass.

(iv) A less direct desiderative is formed by 'e ti'a, which corresponds approximately to “would you like to”, “would they like”, etc. Example:
'E ti'a anei 'ia 'oe 'ia himene?
Would you like to sing?

This construction is formal, and in conversation one would prefer:
'E nehenehe anei tā 'oe 'e himene?
Would you like to sing?

129. Necessitative

In Tahitian there are several degrees of compulsion expressed by the different forms of the necessitative.

(i) \[
\begin{align*}
'e \\
'ia \\
'ua
\end{align*}
\] + verb + \[
\begin{align*}
[ihoa] \\
[ho'i]
\end{align*}
\] + subject

This is the most common necessitative in conversational Tahitian. With present tense, 'e or 'ia may precede the verb, while 'ua indicates past tense. The verb stem is followed by ihoa or ho'i. Ihoa is stronger than ho'i. It should be observed that the ought/must distinction of English has no exact equivalent in Tahitian. Ihoa suggests “must”, while ho'i would approximate to the English “ought”.* Examples:

'E haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.
I must go and get some bread.

'Ia tae ihoa tāua 'i te tahua taura'a manureva 'i te hora piti.
We two must be at the airport at two o'clock.

'Ua haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.
I had to go and get some bread (and did so).

'E haere ho'i vau 'i te fare toa.
I must/ought to go to the shop.

* Real compulsion is rendered rather by the imperative in Tahitian. Ihoa simply means “indeed”, and ho'i, “besides, so”.
The prohibitive form is the same as the negative imperative. Thus:
'Eiaha ihoa 'oe 'e tāpū 'i te vahie.
You must not cut the wood.

(ii) 'e mea + verb + \[ihoa\] + subject

This is a necessitative form indicating that one should have done something, but did not. Example:
'E mea haere ihoa vau 'e rave mai 'i te farāoa.
I should have gone and got some bread.

(iii) 'ia + verb + mau + subject \ldots 'e ti'a ai

This is the strongest necessitative apart from the imperative. It is generally restricted to the present tense, however. Examples:
'Ia 'amu mau vau 'e ti'a ai.
I really must eat.
Negative: 'Eiaha roa vau 'e 'amu.
I really must not eat.

(iv) 'e mea maita'i + 'ia + verb

This is a weaker necessitative, approximating to the English “it is recommended”. Example:
'E mea maita'i 'ia 'amu vau.
It would be well if I ate.

(v) 'e mea faufa'a + 'ia + verb

This translates “to need to”, but with overtones of profit or gain. When this idea is absent, the normal necessitative is used. Examples:
'E mea faufa'a 'ia'u 'ia haere 'e ti'i 'i te moni.
I need to go and get some money.
'E ere 'i te mea faufa'a 'ia'u 'ia haere 'e ti'i 'i te moni.
I do not need to go and get some money.

When the object of “to need” is a noun, the desiderative hina'aro is used, as explained in §128.

130. Conditional

With real condition, the introducers of the conditional clause are:

(i) mai te peu ě
(ii) mai te mea ě
Examples:
'E ta'iri vau 'ia 'oe, mai te peu e 'e ha'aparari 'oe i tēra hapaina.
I shall hit you if you break that glass.
Mai te mea e 'e haere mai 'oe 'ananahi, 'e horo'a ātu vau 'i te tao'a nā 'oe.
If you come tomorrow I shall give you a present.
Both of the condition introducers may be used interchangeably with no distinction in meaning.
With unreal condition, that is, in sentences where the action expressed by the conditional verb does not actually take place, the introducer changes to ahiri. Example:
Ahiri vau 'i hamani 'i te 'aua, 'e'ore ia tā'u mau mā'a tanu 'e 'amu hia 'e te pua'atoro.
If I had built a fence, my vegetables would not have been eaten by the cattle.
Note: ahiri or ahiri ē, may also be used instead of condition introducers in translating real condition, but not often in conversational Tahitian.
The English "would have . . . if" is rendered in Tahitian by 'e mea + verb, followed by ahiri. Example:
'E mea tāpū vau 'i te vahie, ahiri 'oe 'e horo'a mai 'i te moni maita'i nā'u.
I would have cut the wood if you had paid me well.

131. Exercise
(a) Translate into English:
1. 'E 'ita vau 'e hina'aro 'ia ha'aparari 'oe i tā'u hapaina. 2. Te hina'aro nei te tā'ata 'ia tauturu 'oe 'āna. 3. 'E hina'aro rātou 'e hamani 'i te fare. 4. 'Aita tātou 'e hina'aro 'e 'āu. 5. 'E haere ihoa vau 'e ti'i 'i te moni. 6. 'Eiaka roa 'oe 'e ta'iri noa ātu 'i tēra 'uri. 7. 'Ia haere mai ihoa 'oe 'e tāmā'a. 8. 'E hina'aro vau 'i te peni-pūpa'i. 9. 'E mea haere ho'i au 'e ti'i 'i te moni. 10. Mai te peu e 'e maita'i te mahāna 'ananahi, 'e haere tāua 'i te pae miti.
(b) Translate into Tahitian:
1. I must go now. 2. I do not want to go to town. 3. He wants an orange. 4. I must go to the shop. 5. You must not go swimming today. 6. The girls must go and get the bread. 7. They (pl.) want to buy a boat. 8. They two want me to build a boat. 9. You must not break that glass. 10. If that dog eats my fowls, I shall kill him.

132. Fishing
Vocabulary:
fa'a'ite to explain
te huru  
the way, method

te 'ohipa  
the work

te ravaʻai  
the fishing

tu‘u  
to deposit, put in, put down

tiahi  
to chase

'i roto  
into

faʻa‘ati  
to close (a net), accompany

pou  
to descend

'i muri iho  
after that, next

taui  
to change

te vahi  
the place, area

taui  
the fishing

faʻahou  
again

pātia  
to spear (a fish)

Translate:
'I teie mahāna 'e piti 'ahuru nō fepuare matahiti tauatini 'e iva hanere 'e ōno 'ahuru ma vaʻu te hinaʻaro nei 'o Teriʻi tāne 'ia faʻaʻite vau 'iāna 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa ravaʻai 'i Tahiti. 'E faʻaʻite ātu vau 'iāna 'i te huru nō te ravaʻai ʻupeʻa nā te pae ʻaʻau. 'E raverahi ma vaʻa e haere nā te pae ʻaʻau. 'E tuʻu rātou 'i te ʻupeʻa nā te pae ʻaʻau mai te tiahi mai 'i te iʻa 'i roto 'i te ʻupeʻa. 'I reira, 'e faʻaʻati hia te ʻupeʻa. 'I muri iho, 'e pou rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te rave mai 'i te iʻa, 'a tuʻu ātu ai 'i roto 'i te mau vaʻa.

'I muri iho 'i te reira, 'e tāui rātou 'i te vāhi taʻiaraʻa. 'E haere rātou 'i te pae moana 'e tuʻu faʻahou 'i tā rātou ʻupeʻa. Te mau vaʻa faʻaʻati, nā rātou 'e haere 'e tiahi mai 'i te iʻa 'i roto 'i te ʻupeʻa. 'I muri iho 'e pou rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te pātia mai 'i te iʻa. 'I muri iho 'a tuʻu ātu ai 'i roto 'i te mau vaʻa.
Lesson 24

CONJUNCTIONS

133. Usage

This final lesson discusses the usage of the most usual conjunctions in Tahitian which have not already been treated above. Some conjunctions are:

- 'aore ra (or)
- e riro paha (perhaps)
- 'ia 'ore ra (otherwise, lest)
- 'oia ho'i (namely, that is)
- 'aita ra (otherwise)
- nō reira (therefore)
- tēra ra (but, however)
- noa ātu ā (although)
- āre'a ra (however)
- e (and)
- 'e paha (perhaps)
- auā'e (fortunately)

Examples of usage are as follows:

- 'i te mahāna mā'a 'aore ra 'i te tapati
  on Saturday or Sunday
- te pua'atoro 'aore ra te pua'ahorofenua
  the bull or the horse
- 'E rave maita'i tāua 'i te 'ohipa 'ia 'ore ra 'e'ita ia tā tāua puta 'e oti.
  We two must work well; otherwise our book will not be finished.
- 'aita ra 'e'ita ia te fa're 'e oti
  otherwise the house would not have been finished
- 'Ua mana'o vau 'e haere 'e tanu 'i te taro, tēra ra 'uā mo'e tā'u ōpe.
  I thought I would go and plant taros, but I have lost my shovel.
- 'E haere mai 'oia 'e riro paha 'i te tapati.
  Perhaps he will come on Sunday.
- 'E riro paha 'oia 'i te haere mai.
  Perhaps he will come.
- te mau rātere, 'oia ho'i te mau feiā tei haere mai nō te māta'ita'i
  the tourists, that is, the people who come to visit
- Nō reira 'oia 'i haere ai 'e tunu 'i te mā'a.
  Therefore, she went to prepare the food.
- Noa ātu ā ia te mahāna, 'e to'eto'e noa.
  Although the sun is shining it is still cold.
CONJUNCTIONS

107

The hat and the trousers

I was just going to bed; fortunately you rang then.

134. Pearl-shell Diving

Vocabulary:

**hopu** to dive, bathe

**te pārau** the pearl-shell

**tupu** to take place

**te 'ava'e** the month

**fa'a'ati** to surround

**te ā'au** the reef

**'i ropu** in the middle

**te miti** the sea

**te va'a** the outrigger canoe

**te purera'a** the prayer

**nā mua ā'e** before

**fa'a'aea** to remain

**huti** to pull up, pull

**te 'ete** the basket

Translate:

Te 'ohana no te hopura'a pārau 'e tupu ia 'i te mau fenua Tuamotu 'i te mau matahiti 'ato'a. 'E tupu te hopura'a pārau, 'e toru 'ava'e te maorora'a 'aore ra 'e maha. 'Ua 'ite tātou te fenua Tuamotu, 'e mea fa'a'ati hia 'oia 'e te ā'au. 'I ropu 'i te fenua te vai ra ia te miti. E, 'i te reira vahi 'e hopu hia ai te pārau.

Nō te haere 'e hopu 'i te pārau, 'e haere te mau ta'ata nā ni'a 'i tō rātou mau va'a 'i ropu 'i te miti. 'Ia tae rātou 'i reira, 'e fa'aotī rātou 'i te purera'a nā mua ā'e 'a hopu ai. 'E piti ta'ata 'i ni'a 'i te va'a hō'e, hō'e te hopu, e hō'e te fa'a'aea 'i ni'a iho 'i te va'a nō te huti mai 'i te pārau o te fa'a'hia mai 'e te ta'ata hopu. Teie ta'ata hopu, 'e hopu 'oia nā ni'a 'i te hō'e taura o tei tā'amu hia te tapau 'i ni'a iho, nō te, mea, nā teie tapau 'i ni'a te taura 'e fa'atae 'oi'oi iāna 'i raro 'i te miti. 'Ia tae 'oia 'i raro, 'e rave 'oia 'i tāna 'ete 'e fa'a'i 'i te pārau. Ia 'i, e, nō te fa'a'ite 'i te ta'ata huti 'i ni'a 'i te va'a, 'e huti 'oia 'e tōru huitira'a 'i ni'a 'i te taura. 'I te reira taime 'e ho'i mai 'oia 'i ni'a; 'e huti 'ato'a hia te 'ete pārau.

Ia fa'aotī teie hopura'a pārau, 'e hapono hia ia te mau pārau nā te mau feiā-rave-pārau 'i Pape'ete. E, 'i te reira taime ia tā rātou moni 'e roa'a mai ai.
135. Tahiti

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>parau</td>
<td>a word, to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te motu</td>
<td>the island</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te a’ihu’arā’au</td>
<td>the department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fenua</td>
<td>the land, country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pū</td>
<td>principal, main</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'oia ho'i</td>
<td>namely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'oire</td>
<td>the town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mata'i</td>
<td>the wind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parapara</td>
<td>to converse, talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te huru</td>
<td>the subject, manner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>manaʻo</td>
<td>to think</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reva</td>
<td>to leave, depart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'api</td>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hamani</td>
<td>to build</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te purumu</td>
<td>the street</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tātā'i</td>
<td>to repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tau</td>
<td>the time, occasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>riro</td>
<td>to become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māta'ita'i</td>
<td>to look at, admire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te rātere</td>
<td>the tourist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'e raverahi</td>
<td>many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tae</td>
<td>to arrive, come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marite</td>
<td>America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ruperupe</td>
<td>the beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ite</td>
<td>to see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nā mua ā'e</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mata'eina'a</td>
<td>the district</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te marae</td>
<td>the temple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te vāhi</td>
<td>the place, spot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmu</td>
<td>to plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tō</td>
<td>the sugar-cane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tihota</td>
<td>the sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ta'ata-pāpa'i-hoho'a</td>
<td>the artist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fa'a'amura'a</td>
<td>the breeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pu'a'atoro</td>
<td>the cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niu Terani</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te fa'arava'i</td>
<td>the increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ū</td>
<td>the milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te hotera</td>
<td>the hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāmā'a</td>
<td>to eat at table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'otu'e</td>
<td>the point, promontory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mōri-turama-āva</td>
<td>the lighthouse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tī'i</td>
<td>the statue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'o'o'a</td>
<td>the bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'ari'i</td>
<td>to receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'atupu</td>
<td>to organise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tāmā'ara'a</td>
<td>the feast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te taera'a</td>
<td>the arrival</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronetona</td>
<td>London</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fa'afa'aea</td>
<td>to rest, stay</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:

Teie te mau parau nō te mau motu a’ihu’arā’au Farāni nō Polinetia, 'oia ho'i 'o Tahiti te fenua pū, 'oia ho'i te 'oire nō Pape'ete. 'I muri
Tahiti

109

"ë i te reira, te vai nei te mau motu nõ ni'a mata'i, te mau motu Tuamotu, Ma'areva, Matuita, te mau motu nõ raro mata'i, Ra'iātea, Borabora, Huahine, Maupiti. 'I teie nei 'e paraparau vau 'i te huru nō te fenua 'o Pape'ete, Tahiti.

'I Pape'ete 'ato'a te vai nei te tahi mau fare 'apī te hamani hia ra, te mau purum te tātā'i hia ra. Nō reira, 'e nehehe 'ia parau hia 'i teie mau tau 'i mua nei 'e riro ia te 'oire nō Pape'ete 'ei māta'itia'ira'a nā te mau feiā rātere; nō te mea 'e raverahi te mau feiā rātere 'e tae mai 'i Pape'ete, mai te fenua Marite mai, nō te fenua Farāni mai, Peretane mai, te fenua Europa mai, nō te māta'itia'i 'i te huru 'o te ruperupe 'o te fenua Tahiti.

Teie te mau 'ohipa 'e 'ite hia 'e te mau feiā rātere 'ia tae ātu rātou 'i Tahiti. Nā mua ā'e 'e tae rātou 'i te mata'eina'a nō Pa'ea, e 'ite rātou 'i te marae nō Arahurahu. 'Ei reira 'e tae ātu rātou 'i Atimaono, te vāhi matamua 'i tanu hia te tō nō te hamani 'i te tihota. 'E haere ātu rātou 'i Mataiea, Papeari. Tei reira te vāhi pū nō te ta'ata-pāpa'i-hoho'a 'o Paul Gaugin tāne. Mai reira 'e haere ātu rātou 'i Taravao. Tei reira te mau fa'a'amura'a pua'atoro rahi ā'e nō Tahiti. 'E mau pua'atoro nō te fenua Niu Terani mai, tei fa'atae hia mai 'i Tahiti nō te fa'araqa'i 'i te ū nō Tahiti. Mai reira 'e tae ātu rātou 'i Afa'ahiti. Tei reira te hotera Farātea. 'E raverahi mau rātere 'e haere 'i reira 'e tāmā'a āi.

'E ho'i mai rātou 'i Pape'ete nā te mata'eina'a nō Hitia'a, Fa'aone, Papeno'o, Ha'apape. Hou rātou 'a tae ai 'i Pape'ete, 'e haere rātou 'i te 'otu'ē nō Ha'apape, 'oia te Pointe Vénus. 'E māta'ita'i rātou 'i te mōri-turama-āva. Tei reira 'ato'a te ti'i 'ō te ta'ata Peretane ra 'o Captain Cook, tei tae mai 'i Tahiti 'i te matahihi tauatini 'e hitu hanere 'e ōno 'ahuru ma iva 'i te 'o'o'a nō Matavai. 'Ua fa'ari'i 'ia hia 'oia 'e te ari'i-vahine 'o Pomare maha. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira 'ua fa'atupu hia te hō'e tāmā'ara'a nō tō rātou taera'a mai. Te 'ite nei ia tātou ē, te mau feiā matamua 'i tae mai 'i Tahiti nei, 'e mau feiā nō Peretane mai. 'Ua rave 'ato'a rātou 'i te 'ohipa nō te Evaneria 'i Tahiti.
136. Things to do in Tahiti

Vocabulary:
- 'e aha te huru? how are things?
- fa'a'afa'aea to stop, cease
- te ūa the rain
- mai te peu ē if
tea'atī to visit, tour
te mata'eina'a the district
te ruperupe the beauty
- 'e raverahi there are many
te rātere the tourist
tea mau motu raro mata'i the Iles Sous le Vent
māta'ītā'i to visit, admire
āna'e also, as well
tea vāhi 'orirā'a the nightclub (dancing)
te vāhi himenera'a the night-spot (singing)
ete te vai ātura etcetera
te 'ori the dance
te himene the song
maurūru thank you
te fa'a'itera'a the information
- 'e riro paha perhaps
tea fa'a'aeāra'a the stay, holiday
te 'oa'oa the pleasure, delight
mau true, real

Translate:
"'E aha te huru 'i Tahiti nei 'i teie mau mahāna?"
"Mea maita'i. 'Ua fa'a'afa'aea ri'i te ūa. Mea maita'i roa 'i teie mau mahāna."

"'E aha te 'ohipa tā'u 'e nehehehe 'e rave 'ananahi?"
"Mai te peu ē 'e'ita 'e ūa, 'e nehehehe ia tā 'oe 'e haere 'e fa'a'atī nā te mau mata'eina'a. 'Ei reira 'oe 'e 'ite ai 'i te ruperupe 'o te fenua. 'E nehehehe 'ato'a 'oe 'e haere ātu 'i Mo'orea, nō te mea 'e raverahi mau rātere 'e haere nei 'i te reira vāhi. 'E nehehehe 'ato'a 'oe 'e haere roa ātu 'i te mau motu raro mata'i, 'oia ho'i 'o Huahine, Ra'iātea, Borabora, tei 'ia 'oe te hina'arora'a."

"'E mea maita'i roa. 'Ananahi 'e ti'i mai 'oe 'ia'u; 'e haere tāua 'e māta'ītā'i 'i te mau mata'eina'a. 'Ia mana'o vau 'e'ita ihoa 'e ūa 'ananahi. Nā reira ia, 'e haere mai 'oe 'e ti'i 'ia'u 'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i 'i te hora hitu e te āfa."

"E, 'e haere mai vau 'e ti'i 'ia 'oe 'ananahi. 'E haere tāua 'e fa'a'atī 'i Tahiti."

"'E aha āna'e ē te 'ohipa 'e rave hia 'i Tahiti nei?"
"I te pō, 'e nehenehe 'oe 'e haere 'e māta'ita'i 'e te mau vāhi 'orira'a, te mau vāhi himenera'a, mai te Bar Lea, te Hotera Ta'aone, te Pu'o'oro Plage, te Hotera Tahiti e te vai ātura. 'E nehenehe tā 'oe 'e haere 'e māta'ita'i 'ato'a 'i te mau 'ori nō te fenua nei, te 'ori Tahiti, te tamure, te pa'o'a, te hivinau, te aparima, e raverahi ātu ā."

"Maurūru roa 'i tā 'oe fa'a'itera'a mai 'ia'u 'i te huru nō teie vāhi 'o Tahiti. Te mana'o nei vau 'e riro paha teie fa'afa'aeara'a tō'u 'i Tahiti 'i te mea 'oa'oa mau nā'u."
137. Planting Sweet Potatoes

Vocabulary:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tanu</td>
<td>to plant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'umara</td>
<td>the sweet potato</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'ata</td>
<td>the stalks, lianas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maoro</td>
<td>for a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tupu</td>
<td>to grow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'apo'o</td>
<td>the hole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu'u</td>
<td>to put in, deposit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'o</td>
<td>to dig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'a'putu</td>
<td>to heap up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te repo</td>
<td>the earth, soil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oti</td>
<td>to finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha'apo'i</td>
<td>to cover up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'e nehehe</td>
<td>one can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pipi</td>
<td>to water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te pape</td>
<td>the water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mai te peu e</td>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te ārea</td>
<td>the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maoro</td>
<td>the period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa'ari</td>
<td>to be hard, mature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'aore ra</td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mā'a</td>
<td>the fruit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tatara</td>
<td>to dig up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:

Nō te tanu 'i te 'umara, 'e tūpū hia mai ia te 'ata 'ō te mau 'umara tei maoro te tupura'a. 'E hamani hia te mau 'apo'o nō te tamura'a 'i te 'ata 'umara. 'E tu'u hia tēra mau 'ata 'i roto 'i te mau 'apo'o tei 'o hia, e tei ha'a'putu hia 'i te repo. 'Ia oti 'i te tu'u hia te 'ata 'umara. 'i roto 'i te 'apo'o, 'e ha'apo'i hia 'oia. 'E nehehehe 'ia pipi hia 'i te pape te mau 'ata 'umara tanu 'apī, mai te peu ē 'aita 'e ūa, mai te peu ē 'e mea puai roa te mahāna.

Te taime tamura'a 'umara, tei roto ia 'i te ārea nō te 'ava'e me, tiunu, tiurai. Te taime 'e nehehehe ai 'e 'amu 'i te 'umara, 'oia ho'i, 'i te taime 'e pa'ari ai 'oia, 'e pae 'aore ra 'e hitu 'ava'e te maorora'a 'e nehehehe 'ia 'amu hia te reira mau 'umara. 'Ia pa'ari te mā'a, 'e nehehehe 'ia tatara hia mai, mai roto mai 'i te repo.
138. The Eel’s Hole

Vocabulary:

| Te 'apo'o | te tau          | the hole              | the time, period          |
| Te puhi   | te feiā tāi'a  | the eel               | the fisherman             |
| Te 'a'amu | te 'aito       | the legend            | the champion              |
| Pauroa    | Ta'ari'i       | all                   | Taarii                    |
| Hoe       | Pātia          | to paddle             | to spear                  |
| Nā ni'a   | Te toro'a     | in                    | the job, trade            |
| Te va'a   | Te hui ra'atira | the canoe           | the people                |
| 'Amu      | Noa            | to eat                | always                    |
| Te 'otu'e | Te va' a       | the promontory, point |                          |

Translate:

'I teie mahāna 'e parauparau vau 'i te 'a'amu nō te 'apo'o puhi. Te vai ra 'i te mau motu raro mata'i, 'oia ho'i o Taha'a, te mata'eina'a nō Poutoru, te hō'e puhi rahi roa; 'e 'amu noa 'oia 'i te mau tāata. Pauroa te mau tāata 'e hoe mai nā ni'a iho 'i te va'a, 'ia tae 'i tēra vāhi, 'oia ho'i te 'apo'o puhi, 'ei reira rātou 'e 'amu hia ai 'e tēra puhi. Te vai ra 'oia 'i te hō'e 'otu'e tei topa hia te i'oa te 'apo'o puhi, 'oia ho'i te 'otu'e 'ō 'apo'o puhi. E, nā reira te ta'ata te haere mai te mata'eina'a nā ni'a 'i te va'a, te rahira'a 'e 'amu hia ia 'e taua puhi ra.

Te vai 'ato'a ra 'i te reira tau 'e raverahi mau feiā tāi'a. Te 'aito 'i te reira tau nō te reira mata'eina'a o Ta'ari'i ia. 'E ta'ata-pātia-i'a tōna toro'a. Te 'ite nei te hui ra'atira nō teie mata'eina'a 'e 'amu noa teie puhi 'i te mau tāata 'e hoe nā ni'a 'i te va'a. 'Ua mana'o rātou 'i te hō'e mahāna 'e haere 'e pātia ha'apohe roa 'i te puhi, 'ia 'ore 'oia 'e 'amu fa'ahou 'i te mau tāata 'e hoe mai nā ni'a 'i te va'a nō te haere tei mata'eina'a. Tī te tahi mahāna 'ua haere mai 'o Ta'ari'i e tāna 'āuri. 'Ua 'ite 'oia 'i teie puhi tei rapae 'i tōna 'apo'o. 'Ua mana'o 'ona 'e pātia ha'apohe roa 'i teie puhi, 'ia ora te mau tāata 'e hoe nā ni'a 'i te va'a, 'eiahā rātou 'ia 'amu fa'ahou hia 'e tēra puhi. 'I te reira taima 'ua pātia ha'apohe roa 'oia 'i tēra puhi. Mai te reira taima te topara'a hia te i'oa 'ō taua 'otu'e ra, te 'otu'e 'ō 'apo'o puhi.
Vocabulary:

- *riro* to become
- *te mahāna 'oa'oara'a* the festival
- *te hau* the Republic, government
- *fa'atupu* to organise
- *fa'ahanahana* to celebrate
- *te 'arearea* the amusement
- *te taviri* the game
- *fa'anehenehe* to embellish, beautify
- *ha'amata* to start, commence
- *te 'oro'a* the feast, festival
- *matara* to start
- *'e tae ātu* until
- *te a'ahīāta* the early morning, dawn
- *te po'ipo'i* the morning
- *te ta'urua* the feast, festival
- *porote* to walk in procession
- *te nu'u* the army
- *putuputu* to assemble
- *te ārōā* the street, avenue
- *te tavana rahī* the Governor
- *fa'aea* to reserve, remain
- *ha'apoupo* to applaud
- *te feiā porote* the members of the procession
- *te tai* the navy
- *te reva* the air force
- *tere* to go past
- *te muto'i* the police
- *te pupu* the group
- *te fa'e'hau* the soldier
- *te himene* the song
- *te 'ote'a* the dance
- *te mau feiā fa'a'eta'eta tino* the athletes
- *te mau feiā tu'epopo* the footballers
- *te mau feiā taorapopo* the basketballer
- *te fa'aro'o* the religion
- *te porotetani* the Protestants
- *te tatorīta* the Catholics
- *te momoni* the Mormons
- *te taniito* the Sanito Church
- *te petania* the Bethany Church
- *te fare ha'api'ira'a* the school
fa'ari'i to receive

te hui mana the officials

te inuinura'a the drink, toast

te 'orira'a hanahana the grand ball

te peretiteni the Presidency

te hoera'a-va'a the canoe race

te ta'ahira'a-perë'o'o the bicycle race

te fa'a'ahora'a the race

te pua'a'ahofenua the horse

te mahāna hope'a the last day

'opani to close, finish

Translate:

Te parau nō te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai.
Te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai 'ua riro ia 'ei mahāna 'oa'oara'a nā te hau Farāni. Nō reira 'i te fenua Tahiti 'e fa'atupu 'ato'a hia te mahāna 'oro'a nō te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai. Nō te fa'a'ahanahanara'a 'i te 'ahuru ma maha nō tiurai 'i Tahiti, 'e hamani hia ia te mau fare 'arearea'a, te mau fare tavirira'ā nā te mau wāhi 'ato'a 'ō te 'oire, mai te fa'anehenehe hia 'i te mau tiare 'ato'a 'ō te fenua.

'Ia tae 'i te 'ahuru ma toru nō tiurai, te mahāna ia 'e ha'amata ai te mau 'orō'a, te hora 'e mataara ai te mau fare tiurai, mai te hora 'ahuru ma piti ia nō te 'ahuru ma toru nō tiurai 'e tae ātu 'i te hora piti 'i te a'ahiāta. 'Ia po'ipo'i ā'e 'ōia ho'i te 'ahuru ma maha, te mahāna rahō nō te ta'urua, 'i te hora va'u 'i te po'ipo'i 'e tupu ia te porotera'a 'ā te mau nu'u huru rau e raverahi ātu ā. 'I te po'ipo'i 'ahuru ma mahā nō tiurai 'i te hora va'u, 'e putuputu pauroa te mau ta'ata 'i te vāhi porotera'a, 'ōia ho'i 'i te āroā Bruat. 'Ia haere mai te tavana rahō 'ō te fenua 'i tōna vāhi fa'aeara'a nō te ha'apoupo 'i te mau feiā porote, 'e tere mai ia 'i te reira taime te mau mōto nō te mau muto'i farāni. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, te mau pupu fa'ehau huru rau tō te fenua, tō te tai e tō te reva. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, 'e porote mai te mau pupu himene, te mau pupu 'ote'a, te mau pupu fa'a'eta'etara'ā tino, te pupu tu'eopo, taorapopo e raverahi ātu ā. 'E porote 'ato'a mai te mau pupu nō te mau fa'aro'o 'ato'a, 'ōia ho'i te porotetani, tatorita, te momoni, te tanito, te petaniti. 'E porote 'ato'a ho'i te mau tamari'i nō te mau fare ha'api'ira'a 'ato'a.

'Ia oti te porotera'a, 'e fa'ari'i mai te tavana rahō 'i te mau hui mana 'ato'a nō te hō'e inuinura'a. 'I te reira taime 'e mataara ia te mau fare 'arearea'a, te mau fare tavirira'nō te tiurai 'e tae roa ātu 'i te hora ōno 'i te po'ipo'i. 'I te reira 'ato'a pō, 'e tupu ia te 'orira'hana hana hana mai te peretiteni hia 'e te tavana rahō 'ō te fenua.

Te ta'urua nō tiurai 'e tupu ia, 'e piti hepetoma te maorora'a. 'E raverahi mau 'ohipa 'e rave hia 'i roto 'i te reira nau hepetoma 'e
piti, te mau 'ote'a, te mau himene, te mau hoera'a-va'a, te mau ta'ahira'a-pere'o'o, te fa'ahorora'a pua'ahorofenua. 'E rave hia ia 'i roto 'i te reira nau hepetoma 'e piti. 'I muri ā'e 'i te reira, te mahāna hope'a nō te piti 'ō te hepetoma 'o te 'opanira'a ia te ta'urua rahī nō tiurai, 'oia ho'i te 'oro'a rahī ā te hau Farāni.
140. Orange-picking

Vocabulary:

- pafa'ī: to pick, pluck
- te 'anani: the orange
- te fa'a: the valley
- te tau: the season
- mātau: to be accustomed
- ti'i: to pick
- 'i roto: in, inside
- 'i te po'ipo'i roa: early in the morning
- te pi'ite: the bag
- te 'ahu: the clothes
- nō te mea: because
- 'i uta: at the bottom
- te ārea: the period
- haere nā raro noa: to go on foot
- te vāhi: the place
- fa'afa'a'aea: to rest
- fa'ahu: once more, again
- huru ātea ātu: further away
- te ūru 'anani: the orange plantation
- te parara'a: the ripening
- 'i ni'a: on
- te tumu: the tree
- re'are'a: yellow
- pa'uma: to climb up
- fa'a'i: to fill
- 'oa'oa: pleasure, pleasant
- te ruperupe: the beauty
- te haviti mau: the true splendour
- hi'o: to look at
- pou: to descend
- 'i raro: down
- mai te āmo mai: while carrying
- āmo: to carry on the shoulders
- 'i muri iho: after, after that, next
- 'a tae roa ātu: until, as far as
- papū: flat
- 'oia ho'i: namely

Translate:

Te pafa'ira'a 'anani 'i te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u Tahiti. 'Ia tae 'i te tau nō te pafa'ira'a 'anani nō te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u 'i te mata'eina'a nō Puna'auui, 'e haere te mau ta'ata 'ato'a tei mātau 'i te haere 'e ti'i
'i te'anani 'i roto 'i te reira fa'a. 'E haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i roa e tā rātou mau pūte e tō rātou mau 'ahu e te 'ahu ta'oto nō te pō, nō te mea 'ia haere 'e pa'a'i 'i te 'anani 'i te reira fa'a, 'e ta'oto ia te mau ta'ata 'i uta. 'Ia po'ipo'i, 'ei reira rātou 'e pa'a'i ai 'i te 'anani. Te tau nō te pa'a'ira'a 'anani nō Puna'aru'u, tei roto ia 'i te ārea nō te 'ava'e mē, tiunu, tiurai, atete.

'E haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i roa nā raro noa. 'I te āhiāhi 'ua tae ia rātou 'i te vāhi fa'a'afa'aeara'a. 'I te reira taime 'e tāmā'a ri'i rātou e ta'oto, e, 'ia po'ipo'i ā'e, 'e haere fa'ahou rātou 'i te tahi vāhi huru ātea ātu, e, tei reira te āru 'anani nō te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u.

'Ia tae 'i te parara'a nō te 'anani, 'e mea rahi roa te 'anani 'i ni'a 'i te tumu. 'E re'are'a noa 'i ni'a 'i te mau tumu. 'Ia tae te mau ta'ata 'i te reira vāhi, 'e pa'uma rātou nō te pa'a'i 'i te 'anani e nō te fa'a'i tā rātou mau pūte. 'E raverahi mau ta'ata 'e haere, nō te mea 'e mea 'oa'oa nā rātou 'i te haere 'i roto 'i te fa'a nō Puna'aru'u nō tōna ruperupe e te haviti mau 'ia hi'o hia.

'Ia oti tā rātou pa'a'ira'a 'anani, 'e pou mai rātou 'i raro, mai te āmo mai 'i te' anani tā rātou 'i pa'a'i mai. 'E mea huru ātea 'ia haere. 'E raverahi mau taime 'e fa'a'afa'aea rātou. 'I muri iho, 'e haere fa'ahou, 'a tae roa ātu ai 'i te vāhi papū, 'oia ho'i 'i te mata'eina'a nō Puna'aui'a.
141. The Apetahi Flower

Vocabulary:

- **te parau** the word, description
- **te tiare** the flower
- **apetahi** name of a flower
- **āre'a ra** however
- **tupu** to grow, exist
- **āna'e** only
- **te mou'a** the mountain
- **pafa'i** to pick, gather
- **te 'u'ā** the bloom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>te parau</td>
<td>the word, description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te tiare</td>
<td>the flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apetahi</td>
<td>name of a flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āre'a ra</td>
<td>however</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tupu</td>
<td>to grow, exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āna'e</td>
<td>only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te mou'a</td>
<td>the mountain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pafa'i</td>
<td>to pick, gather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te 'u'ā</td>
<td>the bloom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translate:

Te vai ra ia 'e raverahi te mau tiare; āre'a ra 'i te motu nō Ra'iātea te vai ra ia te hō'e tiare 'e'īta 'e tupu 'i te mau vāhi 'ato'a; 'oia ho'i te tiare apetahi. Taua tiare ra, tei te femua Ra'iātea āna'e ia.

Te vāhi tei reira ʻēra tiare, tei ni'a ia 'i te mou'a ra 'ō Temehani. 'E raverahi mau ta'ata 'e haere 'i te tahi mau taimē 'e pafa'i mai 'i teie tiare, 'oia ho'i te tiare apetahi, nō te mea 'e 'ere tōna 'u'ā mai tō te mau tiare 'ato'a. 'Ia mahora tōna 'u'ā 'i te po'ipo'i, 'e po'o'a 'oia. 'Ia mahora mai, 'e mahora 'oia mai te rima ta'ata. 'E tiare nehe nhe ʻōra, mea 'u'o'uo ʻo mua, e, 'e mea matei ʻō raro ā'e mai.

Nō te haere 'e ti'i 'i teie tiare, 'e haere ia te ta'ata 'i te po'ipo'i roa nō te tae ʻātu 'i te vāhi pafa'ira'a ʻi te po. 'Ei reira rātou 'e ta'oto ai. E 'ia a'ahiata, 'e haere rātou 'i pihā'i iho 'i teie mau tiare nō te fa'aro'o 'i te po'o'ara'a mai, nō te mea 'ia mahora tō rātou 'u'ā 'e po'o'a 'oia. 'E tiare maere rahi mau teiē. 'E 'ere 'oia mai te mau tiare 'ato'a tei mātau hia 'e te ta'ata.
142. House-building

Vocabulary:

- **hamani**: to build
- **te fare**: the house
- **te niʻau**: the coconut tree leaves
- **maʻohi**: Polynesian
- **te tumu**: the trunk of a tree
- **te pou**: the post
- **tāpoʻi**: to cover
- **te ʻofe**: the bamboo
- **haʻume**: to weave
- **te paruru**: the wall, screen
- **te ʻopani**: the door
- **te haʻamaramarama**: the window
- **te tumu haʻari**: the trunk of a coconut tree
- **te rāʻau**: the tree
- **ʻafaro**: straight
- **te purau**: a kind of tree (*Hibiscus tiliaceous*)
- **te ʻaho**: the rafters
- **faʻatiʻa**: to sink a post, to agree
- **tāmāu**: to attach, make fast
- **te tahua**: the floor
- **tuʻu**: to put in
- **poto**: short
- **āto**: to thatch

Translate:

Te hamaniraʻa 'i te hō'e fare Tahiti, ʻoia hoʻi te fare niʻau. Nō te hamani 'i te hō'e fare maʻohi, ʻe tāpū hia ia te niʻau; ʻe tāpū ʻatoʻa hia te tumu haʻari. ʻE rave hia te mau tumu nō te hamani 'i te pou nō te fare. ʻE rave hia te mau niʻau nō te tāpoʻi 'i te fare. ʻE tāpū ʻatoʻa hia te ʻofe, ʻe haʻume hia nō te hamani 'i te paruru nō te fare, te ʻopani e te mau haʻamaramarama.

Nō te hamaniraʻa 'i te mau pou ʻe rave hia ia te mau tumu haʻari. Nō te tāpoʻi 'i te fare, ʻe haʻume hia ia te niʻau. E ʻia oti, ʻe tāpoʻi hia ia te fare 'i te mau niʻau haʻume hia. ʻE tāpū ʻatoʻa hia te mau rāʻau ʻafaro, ʻoia hoʻi te mau rāʻau purau e, ʻe raverahi ʻātu ā, nō te hamani 'i te ʻaho ʻō te fare. 'Ia oti te mau pou 'i te faʻatiʻa hia, ʻe tāmāu hia ia te mau ʻaho. 'Ia oti te reira, e āto hia ia te fare. 'I muri iho ʻe hamani hia te tahua ʻō te fare. ʻE tuʻu hia te mau pou potopoto nā roto, e, ʻe tāmāu hia te tahua ʻi te ʻofe ʻo tei haʻume hia. ʻE tāmāu hia te mau paruru ʻofe, te mau haʻamaramarama e te mau ʻopani. 'Ua oti ia ʻi te ie nei te hō'e fare maʻohi.
143. Fishing with Stones

Vocabulary:

- te tautai: fishing
- taora: to throw
- te 'ofa'i: the stone
- tāi'a: to fish
- te tau: the time
- fa'atupu: to organise
- fa'ari'i: to receive, welcome
- te hui ra'atira: the population
- te himene: the song
- te 'ori: the dance
- te tāmā'ara'a: the feast
- fa'a'ati: to visit, tour
- māta'ita'i: to observe, admire
- fa'anaho: to organise
- tāmau: to wear, put on
- te hei: the crown of flowers
- te 'arapo'a: the neck, throat
- te pareu: the loin-cloth
- rau: diverse, numerous
- te 'aua: the enclosure
- ātea: far, distant
- tiahi: to chase
- horo: to run
- te tahatai: the shore
- pata: to take a photo
- te hoho'a: the photo
- taviri: to film
- 'ana'anatae: pleasing, eager, enthusiastic

Translate:

Te tautai taora 'i te fenua Borabora. 'E tupu ia teie huru tāi'ara'a 'i te mau mahāna 'e raverahi te mau rātere 'e haere 'i te fenua Borabora. 'I te reira taime 'e fa'atupu hia te hō'e fa'ari'ira'a 'i te mau rātere nā te hui ra'atira nō Borabora, 'oia ho'i, te mau himene, te mau 'ori e te mau tāmā'ara'a Tahiti. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e haere te mau rātere 'e fa'a'ati 'i te fenua Borabora. 'Ia oti, 'e haere rātou 'e māta'ita'i 'i te huru nō te 'ohipa 'ō te tautai taora 'i Borabora. Teie te fa'anahora'a nō teie huru tautai. 'E haere pauroa te mau hui ra'atira nō Borabora, te tāne e te vahine mai te tāmau mai 'i te hei 'i ni'a 'i te ūpo'o, 'i te 'arapo'a, mai te tāmau 'ato'a mai 'i te mau pareu, 'ua rau te huru. 'I te reira taime 'e haere rātou 'i roto 'i te miti nō te hamani 'i te hō'e 'aua 'ofa'i. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e haere ia te
hui ra'atira ta'ato'a, te tāne, te vahine, te mau tamari'i 'i te hō'e vāhi ātea ma te taora 'i te 'ofa'i 'i roto 'i te miti nō te tiahi 'i te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aua. 'I te reira taime 'e horo pauroa te i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aua 'i te pae tahatai.

'I reira te mau rātere 'e haere mai ia 'e māta'ita'i 'i te mau i'a 'i roto 'i te 'aua ma te pata 'i te hōho'a, ma te tavirī 'i te hōho'a nō teie huru tautai. 'E nehehehe tā te mau rātere pa'ato'a 'e haere 'i roto 'i te 'aua i'a, ma te rave mai 'i te i'a tā rātou 'e hina'aro. Nō teie huru tautai 'i te fenua Borabora 'e mea 'ana'anatae roa ia nā te mau rātere. E nō reira 'e raverahi te mau rātere 'e haere 'i te fenua Borabora nō te māta'ita'i 'i teie huru tā'ara'a.
144. The Breadfruit Legend

Vocabulary:

- te 'a'amu: the legend
- te 'uru: the breadfruit
- te tau: the time
- matamua: first
- pohe: to die
- toe: to remain
- āna'e: alone
- fa'a'apu: to cultivate
- te mou'a: the mountain
- 'imi: to gather, collect
- ö'e: to be in a state
- fifi: to be in difficulties
- te pae tahatai: the sea-shore
- mihi: to weep, lament
- noa: always

Translate:
"I te tau matamua te vai ra ia te hō'e metua vahine, 'ua pohe tāna tāne, e, 'e mea rahi roa tāna mau tamari'i. 'I te reira tau, 'oia ho'i i te tau matamua i te pohera'a tāna tāne, 'ua toe noa mai 'oia āna'e iho e tāna mau tamari'i. Nō reira, nō te fa'a'amura'a i tāna mau tamari'i 'e haere 'oia 'e fa'a'apu nō te tanu 'i te mā'a. Nā mau ā'e, nā tāna ia tāne 'e haere 'e fa'a'apu, e 'e 'imi i te mā'a nō te fa'a'amua ia rātou. 'I teie nei 'ua pohe te tāne ā taua vahine ra; nāna ātura ia 'e 'imi i te mā'a.

'I taua tau ra 'ua ö'e pauroa te femua 'i te mā'a. 'Ua fifi roa teie vahine e tāna mau tamari'i, nō te mea te ö'e nei 'e rātou 'i te mā'a. 'I te tahi mahāna 'ua haere 'oia 'i te pae tahatai e 'ua mihi noa 'oia 'i tāna tāne.

'I te reira taime 'ua haere mai te hō'e ta'ata. 'Ua parau ātu 'īāna "e aha tā 'oe 'e mihi nei?" "Ua paunō ātu teie vahine: "te mihi nei vau nō te mea 'aita tā mātou 'e mā'a fa'a'hou."

'Ua paunō ātu teie vahine: "I teie nei, 'eiaha 'oe 'e mihi nō te mea 'e roa'a tā 'outou mā'a." 'I te reira taime 'ua parau taua ta'ata ra 'i teie vahine: "'eiaha roa 'oe 'e mihi fa'a'hou, nō te mea, 'ananahi 'ia po'iipo'i, 'ia āra mai 'oe, 'e 'ite 'oe 'i te hō'e tumu 'uru 'i mua 'i tō 'oe fare. Taua tumu 'uru ra, 'o tō'u ia tino 'o tā'u 'i fa'ari ro e tumu 'uru, 'ia ora 'oe e tā 'oe mau tamari'i."
'I te po'i po'i a'e 'i te ārara'a mai te vahine, ua tupu te tumu 'uru 'e te hotu noa ra. 'Ua i roa 'i te mā'a. 'Ua 'oa'oa roa teie vahine nō te mea auā'e teie ta'ata 'i 'amua ai rātou 'i te mā'a nō te mea 'ua fa'ariro teie ta'ata 'i tōna tino 'ei tumu 'uru. Nō reira mai, te 'a'amua nō te tumu 'uru, 'oia ho'i te 'uru.
145. The Lepers' Feast Day

Vocabulary:

- te repera: the leper
- te 'oro'a: the feast, celebration
- parau: to call, speak
- hou 'a: before
- te tauiha'a: the present, gift
- hopoi: to send
- te pū: the centre
- te ha'utī: the toy
- te tuha'a: the part
- fa'ahana: to honour
- ha'amata: to open
- te fa'ata'ira'a pū: the fanfare
- te fa'ehau: the soldier
- fa'ahou: again, once more
- pahono: to reply
- tomo: to enter, come in
- te fa'aro'o: the religion, sect
- te pupu: the group
- te āhiāhi: the evening
- te pupu fa'a'area: the orchestra
- 'opani: to close, end
- te ta'a'ēra'a: the farewell
- fa'aotoi: to conclude
- ho'i: to return

Translate:

'Te parau nō te mau repera nō Orofara Tahiti. 'E tupu 'i Tahiti 'i te mau matahiti 'ato'a te hō'e 'oro'a nō te mau repera nō Tahiti, 'oia ho'i nō Orofara. 'E parau hia taua mahāna ra, te mahāna ō te mau repera. Hou 'a tupu ai teie 'oro'a rahi, 'e raverahi ia mau tauiha'a 'e hopoi hia 'i te pū nō Orofara, te vāhi tei reira te mau repera. 'E horo'a hia nā rātou 'e raverahi mau mā'a, te mau tauiha'a 'e tae roa ātu 'i te mau ha'utī nā te mau tamari 'i, 'oia 'ato'a ho'i te mau tuha'a moni.

'Ia tae 'i taua mahāna 'oro'a ra, 'e haere ia te Tavana Rahi 'i Orofara nō te fa'ahana nā i te 'oro'a ā te mau repera. 'I te reira po'i pō'i 'e ha'amata hia ia te 'oro'a nā roto 'i te hō'e fa'ata'ira'a pū ā te mau fa'eahu. 'Ia oti te reira, 'e paraparau mai te Tavana Rahi, mai te pahono hia ātu 'e te Tavana nō Orofara. 'E paraparau fa'ahou te Tavana Rahi nō te pahonora'a 'i te Tavana nō Orofara. 'Ia oti te reira, 'o te mau himene ia nā tō Orofara. 'I muri iho, 'e tomo mai te mau huru fa'aro'o 'ato'a, te mau pupu himene nō te fa'ahana nā i te 'oro'a ā te mau repera 'e tae roa ātu 'i te āhiāhi.
'I taua mahāna 'ato'a ra, 'e raverahi mau himene 'e himene hia mai 'e te mau repera iho nō Orofara, 'oia 'ato'a ho'ī te mau pupu fā'a'arearea nō te 'oire nō Pape'ete, te mau pupu himene, e te 'ori, 'oia ho'ī te pupu Heiva, te pupu Maeva Tahiti, te pupu Tahiti Nui, e te pupu Paulina nō te haere mai 'e fa'aahanahana 'i taua 'oro'a ra. 'E himene 'ato'a mai iā te mau pupu fā'aro'o huru rau. Nō te 'opanira'a i teie 'oro'a 'e paraparau fa'ahou ia te tavana nō Orofara, mai te ha'amaurūru hia ātu 'e te Tavana Rahi. 'Ia oti, 'e himene hia mai te himene nō te ta'a'era'a nā te pupu iho nō Orofara, e, 'o te fā'aotira'a ia te 'oro'a 'ō te mau repera. 'I te reira taime 'e ho'i pauroa te mau ta'ata 'i te 'oire nō Pape'ete. 'O te huru ia te mau fā'anahora'a nō te 'oro'a 'ō te mau repera 'i Tahiti.
KEY TO EXERCISES

§14(a)

§14(b)

§22(a)
1. There are three men. 2. Three dogs. 3. There are three fish. 4. There are twenty men. 5. There are two men. 6. The fifth night. 7. How many fish are there? 8. There are six. 9. The sixth girl. 10. It is twelve o'clock. 11. It is ten past three. 12. It is half past seven. 13. The sixth of March. 14. It is two minutes to five. 15. Next week.

§22(b)
1. 'E toru tau na ta'ata. 2. Na 'uri 'e maha. 3. 'Ehia ta'ata āera? 4. 'E piti ta'ata. 5. Te ēno 'o te pō. 6. 'E hora piti e te āfa. 7. 'E ēno miniti toe 'e hora toru ai. 8. 'E hora maha ma'iri 'e iwa miniti. 9. 'E piti 'ahuru ma ēno ta'ata. 10. Te maha nō Titema. 11. Te 'ahuru ma hō'e nō Mē. 12. 'I te matahiti 'i mua. 13. Te mahāna
matamua nō Eperera. 14. 'E hō'e 'ahuru miniti toe 'e hora ōno ai. 15. Ōno 'ahuru hā'ari.

§29(a)
1. Beautiful hands. 2. The good dogs. 3. The long outrigger canoes. 4. The very good dog. 5. There are two good dogs. 6. There are seven beautiful houses. 7. The shorter man. 8. The bad men. 9. The pig is bigger than the dog. 10. Peu's house is smaller than yours.

§29(b)
1. Te fare nehenehe. 2. Te mau fare nehenehe. 3. Te 'uri maita'i. 4. 'E tau na va'a roroa. 5. Te 'uri maita'i roa ā'e. 6. Te 'uri maita'i roa. 7. 'E va'u mau ta'ata i'ino. 8. 'Ua faito noa te rahi ō te 'uri i te pua'a. 9. 'E mea hu'a ā'e te 'uri i te pua'a. 10. 'E mea rahi ā'e te pua'a i te 'uri.

§35(a)
1. This very good dog. 2. That short man. 3. That beautiful house. 4. Those beautiful girls. 5. This beautiful girl. 6. That bad man. 7. Those few bad men. 8. Those dogs. 9. That dog. 10. This shorter man.

§35(b)
1. Teie fare nehenehe. 2. Teie mau 'uri nehenehe. 3. Teie na rima haviti. 4. Tēra 'uri rahi. 5. Tēra mau va'a roroa. 6. Teie tau na ta'ata rahi. 7. Teie tamāroa iti. 8. Tēna nau 'uri maitata'i e maha. 9. Tēra mimi iti. 10. Tēra mau pōti'i haviti.

§41(a)
1. His knife. 2. Our (dl exc.) dog. 3. Your (pl.) boat. 4. His hands. 5. Your five handsome dogs. 6. The chief's dogs. 7. The mango branch. 8. The carpenters' work. 9. Terii's leg. 10. Peu's dogs. 11. These are their (pl.) boxes. 12. Those are your (dl) beds. 13. That is my book. 14. That is the chief's dog. 15. That is this woman's letter.

§41(b)
1. Tā'u mau 'uri. 2. Tōna ūpo'o. 3. Tō rātou mau va'a. 4. Tā'u mau tipi 'e ōno. 5. Tō rātou mau 'ahu nehenehe. 6. Te ūpo'o ō te i'a. 7. Te 'ama'a ō te tumu vi. 8. Te 'ohipa 'ā te ta'ata. 9. Te ūpo'o ō Teri'i. 10. Te 'avae ō Peu. 11. Nā'u tēra rata. 12. Nāna
§48(a)
1. I ate. 2. He wants a box. 3. They (pl.) will cry. 4. You two are going to town. 5. He gave the present. 6. They (pl.) were drinking beer. 7. The man killed a pig. 8. The women were looking at the sea. 9. The man will eat the mango. 10. The boys are running. 11. The turtle was killed by the fishermen. 12. The man was bitten by the shark. 13. I shall hit the dog with a stick. 14. He was elected member of the Territorial Assembly. 15. The yams were cooked by me. 16. The flowers were planted by the girl. 17. The wood will be cut by you (pl.). 18. A coconut tree is being planted. 19. The rat was eaten by the dog. 20. The dog was hit by him.

§48(b)
1. Te 'amu nei au 'i te hō'e vi. 2. Te 'aū ra 'oia 'inanahi. 3. 'Ua 'ia hia tō'u tāūpo'o 'inanahi. 4. 'Ua pa'imi hia te pōti'i 'e te tamaiti. 5. 'E tāpū vau 'i te vahie 'inanahi. 6. 'E 'au tāua. 7. Te 'amu ra rātou 'i te mau vi. 8. 'Ua hohoni te 'uri 'i tō'u 'avae. 9. 'Ua pohe te tavana 'inanahi. 10. 'Inanahi 'ua ho'o mai vau 'i te mau puta 'e maha. 11. 'Ua hina'aro vau 'i tāna 'uri. 12. Te hi'o nei te pōti'i 'i te miti. 13. Te ta'oto nei te 'uri. 14. 'Ua haere 'oia 'i te 'oire. 15. 'Ua 'ia 'oe 'i tā'u puta.

§55(a)
1. He grows mangoes. 2. They (pl.) broke the glasses. 3. I shall bring my things. 4. You spilled the milk. 5. He killed a pig. 6. They (pl.) stared at the girls. 7. They two will go to the market. 8. The men left. 9. The girls are chattering. 10. We two (exc.) slept.

§55(b)
1. 'E ha'apu tu hia te mau ha'ari marō 'ato'a. 2. 'E fa'anehenehe 'oia 'i te piha. 3. 'E ha'apo'i hia 'oia. 4. 'E fa'aotui vau 'i ta tāua parauparau ra. 5. 'E fa'a'ati hia te 'upe'a. 6. 'E fa'a'ite ātu vau 'iāna. 7. 'Ua fa'a'tupu hia te hō'e tāmā'ara'a. 8. 'Ua fa'a'atae hia mai te mau pua'atoro 'i Tahiti. 9. 'Ua hoehoe te mau ta'ata. 10. 'Ua hi'ohi'o 'oia 'i te i'a.
**§62(a)**
1. The girl was not sought by the boy. 2. His hat was not stolen yesterday. 3. Moana is not sleeping. 4. The ground is not wet. 5. I am not reading. 6. I shall not cut the wood. 7. You will not drink the wine. 8. He will not swim. 9. They (pl.) will not go to the market. 10. I am not eating.

**§62(b)**
1. 'E'ita vau 'e haere 'i te mātete. 2. 'Aita te tao'a 'i horo'a hia 'i te tavana. 3. 'Aita te mau ta'ata 'i tae mai. 4. 'Aore au 'e tāmā'a nei. 5. 'Aita 'ou toutou 'i tāmā'a. 6. 'E'ita te 'uri 'e hohoni 'i te tu'ata. 7. 'E'ita 'o Peu 'e 'au. 8. 'E'ore au 'e 'amu 'i te ūfi. 9. 'Aita te vahine 'i tanu 'i te tumu ha'ari. 10. 'E 'ere rātou 'i te tamari'i.

**§71(a)**
1. We two (exc.) left. 2. There are the Tuamotu Islands. 3. He will arrive in the district of Paea. 4. He will go to Mataiea. 5. He was received by the Queen. 6. A feast was organised. 7. I will explain to him about the work. 8. They (pl.) let down the nets. 9. They (pl.) go to the edge of the lagoon. 10. We two (exc.) think we will go to the islands.

**§71(b)**
1. 'E tāmā'a maitia'i 'ōrua 'i teie mahāna. 2. 'E haere te mau ta'ata 'ato'a. 3. 'Ua haere rātou 'i te po'ipo'i. 4. 'E tāmā'a rātou. 5. Te vai ra te mau tiare 'i te mau motu 'ato'a. 6. 'E'ita taua tiare ra 'e tupu 'i te mau vāhi 'ato'a. 7. 'Ua ti'i 'ou toutou 'i iera tiare. 8. Te haere nei tātou 'i roto 'i te hō'e fare toa. 9. Te hina'aro nei vau 'i te hō'e piripou. 10. 'E rave vau.

**§76(a)**
1. The ground is wet. 2. This is my wife. 3. I have two pigs. 4. They (pl.) have a good dog. 5. That is his house. 6. The yams are not hard. 7. That man is very big. 8. That girl is beautiful. 9. It is not small. 10. We two (exc.) have no money.

**§76(b)**
1. 'E mea roa te purumu. 2. 'E 'ere 'i te mea roa. 3. 'E i'īta tō 'onei. 4. 'E tāmā'ara'a tō 'ananahi. 5. 'E pua'a tā te tavana. 6. 'Aita tō'u 'e fare. 7. 'E piti tōna rima. 8. 'E mea āu roa te 'anani. 9. 'Aita tā rātou 'e moni. 10. 'E 'ere 'i te mea puai 'ōia.
†79(a)  
1. The day before yesterday I went fishing. 2. I cried this morning. 3. This afternoon we (pl. inc.) shall go and buy some bread. 4. Tomorrow morning we (dl inc.) shall work. 5. Tonight I shall sleep at home. 6. Tomorrow I shall buy a car. 7. The girl often cries. 8. Terii is still eating. 9. Yesterday he gave a book. 10. I saw the girl the day before yesterday.

†79(b)  
1. 'Ua 'ite vau 'ia 'oe 'inanahi ra. 2. 'I teie mahāna 'ua hohoni te 'uri 'i te tamāroa. 3. 'Inanahi 'ua 'ia hia tō'u tāūpo'o. 4. 'Ananahi 'e pāpa'i vau 'i te rata. 5. 'Ua fatata te taimene 'e tae mai tātou 'i Tahiti. 6. 'Ananahi 'ia po'i'opo'i 'e haere rātou 'e tai'a. 7. 'Ua hohoni te 'uri 'i tō'u awae 'inanahi ra. 8. 'I teie āhihi 'e haere tātou 'i te 'oire. 9. 'I teie pō 'e 'amu tātou 'i tā Peu pua'a. 10. 'Inanahi 'ua 'ite au 'i te mau tiare nehehe.

†82(a)  
1. The glass is on the table. 2. The wine bottle is under the table. 3. I shall go to town. 4. They (pi.) went to Terii's place. 5. He came. 6. I left. 7. Today I shall go to town. 8. They (pl.) will come at two o'clock. 9. He did that man's work. 10. Drink this water!

†82(b)  
1. Tei roto te i'a 'i te miti. 2. 'Aita 'e i'a 'i roto 'i te miti. 3. Tei mua mai te 'uri 'i te fare. 4. Tei ni'a iho 'oia 'i te tumu rā'au. 5. Tei muri mai te ta'ata 'i te fare. 6. 'E pāpa'i mai 'oe i'a'u 'i te rata. 7. 'I teie mahāna 'e reva ātu ai vau 'i Auteraria. 8. 'I te hora pae 'e tae mai ai rätou. 9. 'Ua haere mai te ta'ata. 10. 'E parau mai 'oe i'a'u.

†86(a)  
1. I shall go and get some food for my dog. 2. I shall buy a chair for my house. 3. I got a canoe for you. 4. You (pl.) will give the present to the girl. 5. He went to town with his dog. 6. He swims well. 7. He left quickly and went fishing. 8. He is a good swimmer. 9. That is my book. 10. I bought a pig for my parents.

†86(b)  
1. 'E ho'o mai vau 'i te tāūpo'o nō 'oe. 2. 'Ua ho'o mai 'oia 'i te i'a nā tāna vahine. 3. 'Ua ho'o mai vau 'i te ma'a i'a nō te āmā'ara'a. 4. 'Ua rave rātou 'i te puta nā'u. 5. Nā Teri'i taua puta ra. 6. 'Ua
haere vau 'i te 'oire e 'o Peu. 7. 'Ua 'āu 'oia e tāna 'uri. 8. 'Ua 'āu vitiviti 'oia. 9. Te 'āu vitiviti nei 'oia. 10. 'Ua hamani vau 'i teie va'a nō 'oe.

§89(a)
1. They (pl.) went to get the bread. 2. Terii went to cut the wood. 3. I went because I want the book. 4. He stayed home because it is raining. 5. I like it because it is a beautiful flower. 6. He went to take a walk. 7. He was still asleep because he was tired. 8. I work in order to live. 9. He built a boat so that he could go fishing. 10. He left at noon because he is eating at Mr Terii's house.

§89(b)
1. 'Ua haere 'oia nō te rave mai 'i te i'a. 2. 'Ua rave 'oia 'i te hamara nō te hamani 'i te fare. 3. 'Ua ho'o mai 'oia 'i te ūfi nō te horo'a ātu 'i tōna metua vahine. 4. 'Ua 'iria 'oia nō te mea 'ua 'amu vau 'i tāna i'a. 5. 'Ua 'oa'oa vau nō tōna taera'a mai. 6. 'Ua here vau 'iāna nō tōna havi. 7. 'Ua parahi noa 'oia nō te mea 'ua rohirohi 'oia. 8. 'Ua marua te mau rau'rere rā'au nō te mea 'ua puai te mata'i. 9. 'Ua haere 'oia 'e hopu 'i te miti nō te ve've'ave'a 'o te mahāna. 10. 'E haere ātu 'oia 'i te 'oire nō te farerei 'i tōna hoa.

§91(a)
1. Chop the wood. 2. Look! 3. Do not cry. 4. May they (pl.) like the girl. 5. Do not swim here. 6. Sit down. 7. Stand up. 8. Do not take the knife. 9. Do not pick the hibiscus. 10. Come back at five o'clock.

§91(b)
1. A 'amu 'i tava mau ūfi ra. 2. 'Eiaha 'e ta'iri 'i te 'uri. 3. A horo'a mai na 'i tēra puta. 4. 'Ia 'oa'oa rātou. 5. 'Eiaha 'e horo vitiviti. 6. A haere a rave mai 'i te i'a 'i te mātete. 7. A 'ana mai 'i te ha'ari. 8. 'Eiaha 'ia mo'e hia 'ia 'oe 'i te rave mai 'i te titeti teata. 9. 'E haere tāua 'e ti'i 'i te poti 'i teie āhiāhi. 10. 'Ia ineine tātou nō te taera'a mai te tavana rahī.

§96(a)
KEY TO EXERCISES 133

§96(b)

§103(a)

§103(b)

§107(a)
1. It is you (pl.) who hit me yesterday. 2. I saw a man building the house. 3. I shall buy the dog that will be given to them. 4. That is the house that I like. 5. That is the dog that they (pl.) bought. 6. I know the carpenter who built that house. 7. I went to get the pig which will be killed for the wedding. 8. I know the man who is being sought by the police. 9. I have found the money that you lost. 10. I very much like the car that he bought.

§107(b)
1. 'O 'oe te hamani 'i te va'a. 2. 'Ua 'ite au 'i te ta'ata 'o tei ta'iri 'i tā 'oe 'uri. 3. Teie te pōti 'i 'o tei tanu 'i te tiare. 4. Tēra te pōti 'i tā tātou 'i 'ite. 5. Teie te rata tā te tavana 'i pāpa'i. 6. 'Ua reva ātu te ta'ata tei pāpa'i 'i teie puta. 7. 'Ua farerei vau 'i te pōti 'i tei fa'aipoipo hia 'inanahi ra. 8. 'Ua 'ite au 'ia Moana 'i te tanura'a 'i te hō'e tumu ha'ari. 9. 'Ua haere vau e hi'o 'i tā'u vahine 'i te 'aura'a. 10. 'O rāua tei haere 'e rama mai 'i te 'oura-miti.
§118(a)
1. I do not know when they (pl.) came. 2. You (pl.) drank beer as you swam. 3. They (pl.) do not know why he cried. 4. I know why he was elected mayor. 5. That man said that you are a good man. 6. We (pl. inc.) do not know when he will return. 7. I do not know how he caught the pig. 8. He does not know whether they are coming. 9. I hope that you understand my letter. 10. I thought that you left.

§118(b)
1. 'Ua 'ite vau i te mahāna 'oia i reva ātu ai. 2. 'Ua ēri haere 'oia ma te 'amu i te hō'e 'anani. 3. 'Aita vau i 'ite nō te aha 'oia i ha'aparari ai i te hapaina. 4. 'Ua 'ite au i te mahāna 'oia i hamani ai i te fare. 5. 'Aita rātou i 'ite nō te aha 'oia i reva ātu ai. 6. 'Ua 'ite rātou e aha tā'u i rave 'inanahi ra. 7. 'Ua 'ite au ē 'ua pūpa'i mai 'oe ia'u. 8. 'Ua parau 'oia e ta'ata ino o 'oe. 9. 'Ua mana'o vau ē 'e mea puai 'oia. 10. 'Ua 'ite au e mea nafea tō te pōti'i ha'apararira'a i te hi'o-ha'amaramarama.

§126(a)
1. We two (inc.) are looking at each other. 2. He sees himself in the water. 3. They (pl.) bought the bread. 4. He hit Peu's dog. 5. Tomorrow I shall try to go fishing. 6. Do you know how to prepare yams? 7. They (pl.) know how to build a house. 8. I can build a house. 9. Can you lift the stone? 10. I cannot lift the stone.

§126(b)
1. Te hi'ohi'o nei rātou rātou iho. 2. 'Inanahi ra 'ua horohorōi rāua rāua iho. 3. Nā ārea ta'ata i ta'iri i te 'uri ā Teri'i. 4. 'E tāmata 'oia i te hamani i te āfata. 5. 'E nehehehe tā'u e rave i te 'ofa'i. 6. 'E 'īta tāna 'e nehehehe 'e rave i te 'ofa'i. 7. 'Ua 'ite anei oe i te hamani i te fare? 8. 'E nehehehe anei tā 'outou e tanu i te āfi? 9. E, 'e nehehehe roa tā mātou 'e tanu i te āfi. 10. 'E 'īta tā mātou 'e nehehehe 'e tanu i te āfi.

§131(a)
1. I do not want you to break my glass. 2. The man wants you to help him. 3. They (pl.) want to build a house. 4. We (pl. inc.) do not want to swim. 5. I must go and get the money. 6. You must not hit that dog. 7. You must come and eat. 8. I want a ballpoint pen. 9. I had to go and get the money. 10. If the weather is fine tomorrow, we (dl inc.) shall go to the beach.
§131(b)

1. 'E reва ihoa vau 'i teie nei. 2. 'Aita vau 'e hina'aro 'i te haere 'i te 'oire. 3. 'E hina'aro 'cia 'i te hō'e 'anani. 4. 'E haere ihoa vau 'i te fare toa. 5. 'Eiaha 'oe 'e haere 'e ʻāu 'i teie mahāna. 6. 'E haere ihoa te pōi'i 'e ti'i 'i te farāoa. 7. 'E hina'aro rātou 'e ho'o mai 'i te poti. 8. Te hina'aro nei rāua 'ia hamani vau 'i te va'a. 9. 'Eiaha 'oe 'e ha'aparari 'i ʻēra hapaina. 10. Mai te peu ʻe 'e hohoni ʻēra ʻuri 'i tā'u moa faʻaʻamu, ʻe taparahi pohe roa vau ʻiāna.
§92. Arrival in Tahiti
Now we are arriving at Faaa, the airport of Tahiti. At half past seven the plane of the UTA French airline arrives at Tahiti airport, Faaa. Then the passengers from the UTA plane go into the tourist reception area. I see many tourists from far away lands, from France, America, Europe, and also from New Zealand.
I see a man coming with his bags. He wishes to take a taxi to go to his hotel. The tourist asks the taxi-driver to take him to town, where his hotel is. He asks the taxi-driver:
"Tell me, can you take me and drive me to the hotel?"
"Yes, certainly. Let's go. Where are your bags?"
"Here. You can take them."
"I shall put them in the taxi and we will go to your hotel in Papeete."

§97. The Post Office
This morning a tourist goes to the post office to post his letters and his parcel to America. Now, he goes into the post office. He sees a beautiful post office girl. Then he asks the girl how to post his letters and his parcel.
"Good day, lovely girl. How are things this morning?"
"Very good. What brings you here?"
"I have come to post my two letters and my parcel to America."
"Don't panic; first I shall weigh your letters. Give me your letters. For these two letters it is thirty-two francs. Is your parcel to be sent too?"
"Yes, it is to be sent to America as well."
"Well, give it to me and I shall weigh it. Your parcel is two kilograms. It is 140 taras (700 CFP) to send this parcel by air-mail."
"Thank you, lovely girl. I am very pleased because in coming here I have seen what a beautiful girl you are."

§104. Conversation
"Where have you been today?"
"I went to the market to buy some fish. I arrived at the market and there were no fish. So I only got some red bananas, some sweet potatoes, and yams. How about you? Where have you been today?"

"I have been swimming because I had no work today. I thought I would go and swim a little. When are you going to Raiatea?"

"I think perhaps next week. That is when we will be going to Raiatea. The length of the stay will be perhaps two or three months. And you? Where are you going in the near future?"

"We think we will go to the Matuita Islands because we have some friends there who wrote saying that perhaps we would like to go and stay on Matuita for a few days. We can certainly go out to Matuita."

"Now I think the time has come for me to go swimming. So I shall have to end our conversation. I think, too, that your wife is waiting at home preparing food. May you enjoy your meal."

§108. Visit to the Shops

Here are a few explanatory words about going to the shops. Now we are going into a shop to purchase some items that we want.

I go into the shop and ask the shop-assistant: "I would like a good pair of trousers for myself."

I ask her to give me the blue trousers. So she gives them to me.

"How much are these trousers?"

"They are two hundred taras plus five hundred (1500 CFP). Which ones do you want?"

"I would like those blue ones. How much are they?"

"They are two hundred taras (1000 CFP)."

"Give me the blue ones."

She gives them to me and I take them. I pay the two hundred taras (1000 CFP).

"There is your money. Give me also that beautiful shirt down there that I can see. Could I have it, please?"

"Don't panic, I'll go and get it. Here is your shirt. Do you want it?"

"Yes, that's the one I want. Tell me how much it is."

"This is the price. One hundred taras plus thirty (650 CFP)."

"It is not dear. I'll take it. Wrap up the trousers and the shirt in a parcel. Yes, here is the money for the shirt and trousers.

"I must go; thank you very much for giving me the details about the prices of the shirt and the trousers in this shop."
§119. Copra
A few words about copra making. To make copra, all the dry coconuts are gathered together. When this has been done, the ripe or dry coconuts are cut in two. They are cut up with an axe. After that, the coconuts which have been cut in two are opened up and then one digs around them so as to remove the meat. When this is finished, the coconut meat, that is, the copra, is dried in the sun for a period of two or three weeks, if the weather is good. When the copra is quite dry, it is put into bags to send away, and sold.

§127. The Market
The Tahiti market is always full of produce. There is a great variety every day. This is how it is organised: the Papeete market is always open from Monday until Sunday, from four o'clock in the morning until seven o'clock in the evening. On Sundays it is open from four o'clock in the morning until ten o'clock.

There are many foodstuffs which come from the districts of Tahiti. They come also from the islands of Moorea, Huahine, Raiatea, Borabora. The days when there is most produce at the market are from Thursday until Sunday. From Monday until Wednesday there is not much produce which comes into the Papeete market. There is a large amount of produce and other local products on sale. There are very many kinds of fish; shell necklaces are also sold, and carvings, hats, and baskets.

There are many tourists who come to the Papeete market to look at the quantity of produce and the fish. Because of the great variety of products, the Papeete market has become the delight and joy of the tourists.

§132. Fishing
Today, the twentieth of February 1968, Terii wants me to explain to him fishing methods in Tahiti. I shall explain to him the method of fishing with nets at the edge of the reef. Many canoes go out to the edge of the reef. They let down their nets at the reef's edge so as to chase the fish into them. Then the nets are closed. Next, they dive into the sea to collect the fish so as to put them into the canoes.

After that, they change fishing areas. They go to the edge of the lagoon and once more let down their nets. It is the accompanying canoes which go and chase the fish into the nets. After this, the fishermen dive into the sea to spear the fish, and then put them into the canoes.
§134. Pearl-shell Diving

The work of pearl-shell diving is done every year in the Tuamotus. The pearl-shell diving season lasts three or four months. We know that the Tuamotus are surrounded by reefs. In the middle of the land is the sea. It is there that pearl-shell is dived for.

In order to dive for pearl-shell, men go out into the deep water in outrigger canoes. When they arrive, they say a prayer before diving. There are two men in each canoe, one who dives and one who remains in the canoe to pull up the pearl-shell baskets which are filled by the diver. This diver descends on a rope to which a lead weight is attached, since it is this lead weight which brings him quickly to the bottom of the water. When he gets to the bottom, he takes his basket and fills it with pearl-shell. When it is full, in order to signal the ropeman in the canoe, he pulls three times on the rope. Then he comes up and the pearl-shell basket is pulled up as well.

When the diving is finished, the pearl-shell is sent to the pearl-shell merchants in Papeete. Then the divers receive their pay.

§135. Tahiti

Here are a few words about the French island departments of Polynesia, Tahiti, the main island, and the town of Papeete. Besides Tahiti, there are the Leeward Islands, the Tuamotus, Maareva, Matuita, the Windward Islands, Raiatea, Borabora, Huahine, and Maupiti. First we will talk about the area of Papeete, Tahiti.

In Papeete there are new houses being built, and roads being repaired. For this reason it can be said that in the future Papeete will become the delight of tourists, since there are very many tourists who come to Tahiti from America, from France, from Britain, and Europe, to admire the beauty of the island of Tahiti.

Here are the things that will be seen by tourists when they come to Tahiti. Before they arrive in the district of Paea, they will see the temple of Arahurahu. From there they go to Atimaono, the main place where sugar-cane is planted for the manufacture of sugar. Then they go on to Mataiea and Papeari. This is the main haunt of the painter Paul Gaugin. From there they go to Taravao. There, there is the biggest cattle-breeding establishment in Tahiti. Here there are New Zealand cattle which are imported to Tahiti to increase milk production. From there they come to Afaahiti. There, there is the Hotel Faratea, where very many tourists come to eat.
They return to Tahiti through the districts of Hitiaa, Faaone, Papenoo, and Haapape.

Before arriving in Papeete, they go to the promontory of Haapape, in other words to Point Venus. There they admire the lighthouse. Also at Point Venus is the statue of the British man, Captain Cook, who arrived in Tahiti in the year 1769 in Matavai Bay. He was received by Queen Pomare IV. After that, a feast was organised in honour of their arrival. We see then that the first people to arrive in Tahiti were British, from the city of London. These people also carried out missionary work in Tahiti.

§136. Things to do in Tahiti

“How are things in Tahiti these days?”

“Good. The rain has stopped a little. Things are very good these days.”

“What can I do tomorrow?”

“If it does not rain, you can go and visit the districts. There you will observe the beauty of the countryside. You can also go to Moorea since there are many tourists who go there. You could also go to the Iles Sous le Vent, namely Huahine, Raiatea, Borabora, just as you wish.”

“Excellent. Tomorrow you will pick me up and we will go and visit the districts. I do not think it will rain tomorrow. So you can come and pick me up tomorrow morning at half past seven.”

“Yes, I shall come and pick you up tomorrow. We shall make a trip around the island.”

“What other things are to be done in Tahiti?”

“In the evenings you can go and visit the nightclubs, the singing-spots like the Bar Lea, the Hotel Taaone, the Puoooro Plage, the Hotel Tahiti, and still more. You can also go and watch the local dances, Tahitian dancing, the tamure, the paoa, the hivinau, the aparima, and more.”

“Thank you very much for the information you have given me about this place. I think perhaps that my Tahitian holiday will be a real delight.”

§137. Planting Sweet Potatoes

In order to plant sweet potatoes, the stalks of the sweet potatoes which have been growing for a long time are cut off. Holes are made in which to plant the sweet potato cuttings. These cuttings are placed in the holes which have been dug and where the earth has been piled up. When the sweet potato cuttings have been placed in
the holes, they are covered up. One should then water the newly planted sweet potato cuttings, if it does not rain or if the sun is very strong.

The season for planting yams is during the months of May, June, July. The time until one can eat the sweet potatoes, that is to say the time when they are mature, is about five or seven months. The sweet potatoes can then be eaten. When the vegetable is mature, it can be dug up from the ground.

§138. The Eel’s Hole

Today I shall tell the story of the eel’s hole. There was in the Iles Sous le Vent, notably on Tahaa, in the district of Poutorou, a huge eel which always ate people. All the people who paddled there in their canoes were eaten by that eel when they came to a certain spot. He was at a promontory which was given the name “the Eel’s Hole”, in other words “Eel’s Hole Point”. It was past this place that people came in from the districts by canoe. And most of them were eaten by the eel.

At that time there were also many fishermen. The champion of the land at that time was Taarii. His trade was spear-fishing. The people of the island saw that the eel always ate people who travelled by canoe. One day they thought they would go and spear the eel in order to prevent him from ever again eating the people who paddled their canoes to the town.

One day Taarii came armed with his spear. He saw the eel outside his hole. He thought he would spear the eel so that the people who travelled by canoe might live, so that they would never more be eaten by that eel. At this time he speared the eel. From that time on, the name given to that promontory is “Eel’s Hole Point”.

§139. The Fourteenth of July

The description of the fourteenth of July.

The fourteenth of July has become the National Day of the French Republic. For this reason the festival of the fourteenth of July is always held in Tahiti also. To celebrate the fourteenth of July in Tahiti, amusement and side-show stalls are built everywhere in the town, festooned with all kinds of tropical flowers.

On the thirteenth of July, the day on which the festivities commence, the stalls open from midday until two o’clock in the morning. The next morning, in other words the fourteenth, the main day of the festival, at eight o’clock in the morning there is a march-past by the armed forces and many other groups. At eight o’clock in the
morning of the fourteenth of July everyone assembles in the march-past area, in Bruat Avenue. When the Governor of the Territory arrives at his reviewing stand, the motor cycles of the gendarmerie swing past. Following them are the different platoons of soldiers from the army, navy, and air force. Next come groups of singers, dancers, athletes, footballers, basketballers, and many others. Groups from all religious sects also march past, Protestants, Catholics, Mormons, the Sanito and the Bethany Churches. The pupils from all the schools also march past.

When the procession has finished, the Governor receives the officials of the Territory for a toast. At this time the amusement stalls and side-shows open right through until six o'clock in the morning. That same evening there is a grand ball presided over by the Governor of the Territory.

The July festival lasts for two weeks. There are many things happening during those two weeks: native dances, singing, canoe, cycle, and horse races. All this takes place during these two weeks. After that, the last day of the second week marks the closing of the great July festival, the time of celebration for the French Republic.

§140. Orange-picking

When the time comes to harvest the oranges of the valley of Punaaruu, in the district of Punaauia, all the men who are used to picking oranges in that valley go in. They leave early in the morning with their bags, their clothing, and their night apparel, because when people go to gather oranges in the valley, they sleep at the bottom end of the valley. It is the next morning that they pick the oranges. The season for the orange harvest at Punaaruu is during the months of May, June, July, August.

The pickers go into the valley on foot early in the morning. In the afternoon they arrive at the resting place. At that time they eat a little and sleep, and in the morning they continue to a spot still further away. That is where the Punaaruu orange plantation is.

When the orange season arrives, there are very many oranges on the trees. The trees are just a mass of yellow. When the people get to the spot, they climb up to pick the oranges and to fill their bags. There are many people who go, as it is a pleasure for them to go into the Punaaruu valley because of its beauty and real scenic splendour.

When their orange harvest is finished, they descend, bearing the oranges that they have gathered. It is a long way to go, and they rest many times. Then they continue until they reach level ground, the district of Punaauia.
§141. The Apetahi Flower

There exist many flowers, but on the island of Raiatea there is a flower which does not grow everywhere; this is the apetahi flower. This flower is found only on Raiatea.

The place where the flower is found is on Temehani mountain. There are many people who go there from time to time to pick this flower, because its bloom is not like that of other flowers. When its petals open in the morning it makes a noise. When it opens, it opens like a human hand. It is a very beautiful flower, white on top and green underneath.

In order to go and pick this flower, people leave early in the morning so as to arrive in the evening at the place where the flowers may be gathered. There they sleep. When it is dawn, they approach the flowers in order to hear the noise, because when their petals open, they make a noise. This flower is extremely rare. It is not like the other flowers which people are accustomed to see.

§142. House-building

This is how a Tahitian house, a house made of coconut leaves, is built. To build a Polynesian house, coconut leaves are cut off and the trunks cut up. The trunks are taken to make the house-posts. The coconut leaves are taken to cover the house. Bamboo is also cut and woven to make the walls, the door, and the windows.

To make the posts, trunks of coconut trees are got. Coconut leaves are woven to cover the house. When this is finished, the house is covered with them. Straight beams are also cut, from the purau tree and others, to make the rafters of the house. When the posts have been sunk, the rafters are attached. When this is finished, the house is thatched. Next, the floor of the house is made. The short posts are installed inside, and the floor is laid, lashed in place with woven bamboo. The bamboo walls are put in, as are the windows and doors. A Polynesian-style house is now completed.

§143. Fishing with Stones

Fishing with stones on Borabora. On Borabora this type of fishing is done when there are a lot of tourists. At these times a reception is organised for the tourists by the population of Borabora, consisting of songs, dances, and Tahitian feasts. When this is finished, the tourists go and tour the island of Borabora. Then they go and watch the way fishing with stones is done.

This is how this type of fishing is organised: the whole population, men and women, are adorned with crowns of flowers on their heads.
and around their necks and wear many different kinds of sarongs. They go into the water to make a stone enclosure. When this is finished, everyone, men, women, and children go out to the deep water throwing stones into it so as to chase the fish into the enclosure. Then the fish all race into the enclosure, which is right at the shore. The tourists go in to look at the fish in the enclosure, taking photos and filming this fishing activity. All the tourists can go into the fish enclosure and take the fish of their choice. Tourists are most enthusiastic about this type of fishing, and it is for this reason that many tourists come specially to Borabora to watch it.

§144. The Breadfruit Legend

Once upon a time there was a mother whose husband was dead and who had many children. At that time, that is to say, at the time of the death of her husband, she always remained alone with her children. So in order to feed them she would go and tend the gardens and plant vegetables. Previously it was her husband who went to tend the gardens and collect the food to feed them. Then the woman’s husband died. It was now she who collected the food.

At that time the country was in a state of famine. The woman and her children were in great difficulties because they had no food. One day she went down to the sea-shore and wept for her husband.

At that time a man approached. He said to her, “Why are you weeping?”

The woman replied: “I am weeping because we no longer have any food.”

Then the man said: “Do not cry, because you will have food.” Then he said to her: “Weep no more, because tomorrow morning when you wake up, you will see a breadfruit tree in front of your house. That tree will be my body transformed into a breadfruit tree, so that you and your children may live.”

The next morning when the woman woke up, the breadfruit tree had grown and it was already bearing fruit. It was laden with fruit. The woman was very happy because fortunately, because of this man, they could eat, since he had transformed his body into a breadfruit tree. From this comes the legend of the breadfruit tree.

§145. The Lepers’ Feast Day

A few words about the lepers of Orofara, Tahiti. Each year in Tahiti there is a celebration for the lepers of Tahiti, of Orofara. That day is called lepers’ day. Before this great celebration takes place, many presents are sent to the centre of Orofara, the place
where the lepers live. Much food and many parcels are given to them, even toys for the children and also gifts of money.

When this feast day arrives, the Governor attends so as to pay honour to the feast of the lepers. The celebration is opened in the morning by a fanfare from the armed services. When this is over, the Governor speaks, to which the Director of Orofara replies. The Governor speaks again in reply to the Director of Orofara. When this is finished, there are songs by the people of Orofara. Next, all the religious groups and groups of singers come in to pay honour to the feast of the lepers until the evening.

On this day there are many songs sung by the lepers of Orofara themselves; there are also orchestras from the town of Papeete, groups of singers and dancers, namely the Heiva group, the Maeva Tahiti, Tahiti Nui, and Paulina groups who come and pay honour to this celebration. The different religious groups also sing. The Director of Orofara speaks again to end the celebration, and is thanked by the Governor. Then songs of farewell are sung by the Orofara group itself, and the celebration is over. At this time all the people return to the town of Papeete. This is how the lepers' feast day is organised in Tahiti.
146. Kinship Terms

The most commonly used kinship terms are as follows:*  

- **te fēti'i**  the family  
- **na metua**  the parents  
- **te metua tāne**  the father  
- **te metua vahine**  the mother  
- **te tamaiti**  the son, boy, child  
- **te tamāroa**  the son, boy (older than ten years)  
- **te tamaiti pa'ari†**  the daughter  
- **te tamāroa pa'ari**  the daughter, girl (older than ten years)  
- **te tamāhine**  the youth (older than twenty)  
- **te tamāhine pa'ari**  the girl (older than twenty)  
- **te taure'are'a tāne**  the girl (about twenty)  
- **te pōti'i**  the younger brother or sister  
- **te teina**  the elder brother, brother  
- **te taea'e**  the eldest brother  
- **te taea'e matahiapo**  the elder sister, sister  
- **te tuahine**  the eldest sister  
- **te tuahine matahiapo**  the adopted son  
- **te tamaiti fa'a'amu**  the adopted daughter  
- **te tamāhine fa'a'amu**  the grandfather  
- **te papa ru'au**  the grandmother  
- **te māmā ru'au**  the grandson  
- **te mo'otua tāne**  the grand-daughter  
- **te mo'otua vahine**  the great-grandchild  
- **te hina**  the twins  
- **te maeha'a**  the uncle, aunt  
- **te metua fēti'i**  the son-in-law  
- **te huno'a tāne**  the family  

* A more complex terminology also exists, but this is used only in land titles or genealogies.  
† **Pa'ari** is used only when there is reason to be very specific about age.
THE TAHITIAN FAMILY

*te hino'a vahine*  the daughter-in-law
*te metua ho'ovai tāne*  the father-in-law
*te metua ho'ovai vahine*  the mother-in-law
*te tao'ete tāne*  the brother-in-law
*te tao'ete vahine*  the sister-in-law
Tahitian–English Glossary

ä again, once more
a'huiäta dawn, early morning
'a'ahu 'o'omo shirt
'a'amu legend
'a'au reef, reef enclosure
ä'e used to convey the comparative
ä'e nei already
ä'e ra then
äfa half
'afa'i to transport
'afaro straight
afata box
afata tauiha'a parcel, baggage
afea? when?
ähiähi afternoon, evening
ahiri if, well, then
äho to breathe
'aho rafter
'ahu clothes, dress, shirt
'ai particle indicating movement
'ai to eat (of animals)
'a'ita no, not
'a'ita re'a few
'a'ita roa ātu never
'aiteä not yet
'aito champion
'ai young, baby
'aama branch
'amara rā'au branch, stick
a maha fourth
āmo to carry on the shoulder
'amu to eat
'amui bundle of goods, tied
'amuru'amā'a table
'ana to grate
'ana'ana shining, to shine
'ana'anaaea eager, enthusiastic
āna'e also, as well, only
'ananahi tomorrow
'ananahi ātu day after tomorrow
'ananahi 'ia pō tomorrow night
'ananahi 'ia po'ipo'i tomorrow morning
'anani orange
*a napō tomorrow night
anava river
amei interrogative marker
āni to ask
āo world, day
ā'o to warn, chastise, preach
'a'o fat of fish
'aore no, not
'aore ra or
a pae fifth
apara apple
aparima kind of dance
apetahi kind of flower
'api page
'api new
'api-parau writing-paper
a piti second
'apo'o hole
Apo'ora'a Rahi Territorial Assembly
āra to wake up, beware
'arapoa neck, throat
'ara'uā'e soon
area period
'are'a ra however
'arearea amusement
'are miti wave
ari'i king, royal family
ari'i vahine queen
äroä street, avenue
äroha to greet
'ata to laugh, stem
ätä cloud
'ätä difficult, bunch
'a tae roa ātu until, as far as
a tahi first
atari bunch of fruit
ātea distant, far away
Atete August
'ati disaster, misfortune
atira enough
āto to thatch
'ato'a also
Atopa October
a toru third
ātu indicates movement away
from the speaker
atua God
ātura then
'atu'atu to arrange, to place,
near
au I, me
'au to chew
āu to swim
āu nice, good, to like
āu to hunt
'aua fence, enclosure
auā'e fortunately
āuahi fire
āuā'u to hunt, pursue
'aufau to pay
'auri iron, spear
'aute hibiscus
Auteraria Australia
āva passage (between reefs)
'ava'a'a cigarette, sour, salty
'avae leg
'ava'e month, moon
āvatea afternoon
'e it is, demonstrative particle
ē different
'e aha? what? why?
'e aha te huru? how are things?
'e aha te tumu? for what reason?
'e 'ere not
'ehia? how much?
'ehia moni? how much?
'ei in, at, as
'eiā thief
'eiāha negative imperative
'eiāha 'e rū! there's no hurry!
'e'ita no, not (future)
ēna already
'e'ore no, not (future)
'e paha perhaps
Eperera April
'e raverahi many, numerous
'erē'ere black, brown
'e riro paha perhaps
'e tae ātu until, as far as
'ete basket
'e te vai ātura etcetera
'e vai? by whom?
fa'a valley
fa'a- causative prefix
fa'a'afaro to straighten
fa'a'ahu to clothe
fa'a'amu to adopt a child, to feed
fa'a'amura'a breeding
fa'a'apu farmer, plantation, to
cultivate
fa'a'atti to surround, tour, close
(a net)
fa'a'aea to stop, stay, reserve
fa'a'eta'eta tino athlete
fa'a'afa'aea to stay, stop, remain,
cease
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conventional Tahitian</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'a</em> 'aeara'a</td>
<td>holiday, stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'afaito</em></td>
<td>to weigh, make equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'afare'i</em></td>
<td>to introduce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'afariu</em></td>
<td>to convert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'afatata</em></td>
<td>to bring near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'aha'amā</em></td>
<td>to shame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ahanahana</em></td>
<td>to celebrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ahapa</em></td>
<td>to punish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ahoro</em></td>
<td>to drive, convey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ahorora'a</em></td>
<td>race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ahou</em></td>
<td>again, once more</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'a'i</em></td>
<td>to fill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'a'ino</em></td>
<td>to do evil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'aiopo</em></td>
<td>to marry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'a'ite</em></td>
<td>to explain, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'a'itera'a</em></td>
<td>information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'amahu</em></td>
<td>to be patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'amata'u</em></td>
<td>to terrify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'anaho</em></td>
<td>to organise, place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'anehenehe</em></td>
<td>to beautify, clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'aotio</em></td>
<td>to end, conclude, finish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'arapu</em></td>
<td>to stir, mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'arava'i</em></td>
<td>to increase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ari'i</em></td>
<td>to receive, to accept, recipient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ariro</em></td>
<td>to accept, to become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'aro'o</em></td>
<td>to listen to, to hear, to believe, religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'atae</em></td>
<td>to import</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ata'i</em></td>
<td>to cause weeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ata'ira'a pū</em></td>
<td>fansfare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*fa'ātea!'</td>
<td>go away!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'ata'i</em></td>
<td>to agree, sink a post</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'atito</em></td>
<td>to pollenate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'atupu</em></td>
<td>to organise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fa'e'hau</em></td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>faito</em></td>
<td>to weigh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fanau</em></td>
<td>to be born, give birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>fanau'a</em></td>
<td>young of animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Faraire</em></td>
<td>Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>farāne</em></td>
<td>franc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Farāni</em></td>
<td>France, French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>faraoa</em></td>
<td>bread</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fare** house
**Fare 'auri** prison
**Fare inura'a** bar, bistro
**Fare iti** toilet, W.C.
**Fare ha'api'ira'a** school
**Fare hau** town hall
**Fare ma'i** hospital
**Fare moni** bank
**Fare purera'a** church
**Fare rata** post office
**Fārerei** to meet, see, visit
**Fare tāmā'ara'a** restaurant
**Fare toa** shop
**Fata'ata** soon
**Fati** to be broken
**Faufa'a** gain, profit, worth
**Fe'fe** twisted
**Fē'ē** a boil
**Fē'i** red banana
**Feiā** group of people
**Feiā-porote** members of a procession
**Feiā-rave-pārāu** pearl-shell merchants
**Feiā-tai'a** fishermen
**Fenua** ground, country, land
**Fepuare** February
**Feruri** to think, reflect
**Fēti'i** family
**Feti'a** star
**Fifi** to be in difficulties
**Fiu** to be weary, bored

**Ha'a-** prefix used with causative verb, indicating “to cause to be done”, “to have something done”
**Ha'a'afaufau** to debase
**Ha'a'afe** to bend
**Ha'a'afī** to entangle
**Ha'a'fīrīrī** to curl
**Ha'a'fiu** to bore
**Ha'amaheu** to discover
ha’a‘amaita‘i to do good
ha’a‘aman to authorise
ha’a‘amani‘i to spill
ha’a‘amānina to make level
ha’a‘amaoro to delay
ha’a‘amaramarama to enlighten, to explain, window
ha’a‘amarari to disperse
ha’a‘amata to state, commence
ha’a‘amatara to untie
ha’a‘amau to establish
ha’a‘amau to waste
ha’a‘ama‘ue to make fly
ha’a‘ama‘ui to inflict pain
ha’a‘amaurū to thank, please
ha’a‘amene to make round
ha’a‘ami‘o to crumple
ha’a‘amo‘e to forget, lose
ha’a‘apa‘apa‘a to roast
ha’a‘apapū to level, assure
ha’a‘aparara to break, smash
ha’a‘apau to consume
ha’a‘ape’a‘ape’a to annoy
ha’a‘ape’epe‘e to hasten
ha’a‘api‘i to learn
ha’a‘apiha’a to cause to boil
ha’a‘apiha‘e to vomit
ha’a‘apohe to kill
ha’a‘apo‘i to cover up
ha’a‘apo to shorten
ha’a‘apou‘ou to applaud
ha’a‘apuai to exert strength
ha’a‘apua‘e to gather together
ha’a‘apupa‘u to class, classify
ha’a‘apurara to scatter
ha’a‘aputa to pierce
ha’a‘aputu to heap up, gather up
ha’a‘ari coconut
ha’a‘ware to tell lies
ha’a‘vi to punish
haere to move, go
haere ātu to go
haere mai to come
ha’erera’a visit
ha’haere to go (dl)
ha’hū to shave, razor
ha’hānani to build, make
ha’hānara hammer
ha’paina glass
ha’pe mistake, to be wrong
ha’pono to send, post
ha’pū pregnant
haru to seize
hau government
haumi wet, damp
ha’u‘ne to weave
ha’uti to play, toy, game
hava‘i to put, deposit, send
haviti beautiful
havittiti beautiful (pl.)
hei garland, crown
hei-pūpū shell necklace
hemo to be surpassed, to pass
hepetoma week
here to love, sweetheart
hia passive marker
hi’a to slip, fall
himene song, to sing
hina great-grandchild
hina’aro to want, like
hio to whistle
hi‘o to observe, see, look at, glass, mirror
hi‘ohi‘o to stare at
hītimahuta to be startled, to start
hitu seven
hivinau kind of dance
hoa friend
hoe to paddle, row
hō’e one, a, an
hō’e ‘ahuru ten
hō’e ‘ahuru ma hitu seventeen
hō’e ‘ahuru ma hō’e eleven
hō’e ‘ahuru ma iva nineteen
hō’e ‘ahuru ma maha fourteen
hō’e ‘ahuru ma ōno sixteen
"hō'e 'ahuru ma pae" fifteen
"hō'e 'ahuru ma piti" twelve
"hō'e 'ahuru ma toru" thirteen
"hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u" eighteen
"hō'e hanere ma hō'e" one hundred
"hō'e hanere ma hō'e" one hundred and one
"hō'e tauatini" one thousand
"hoehoe" to row here and there
"hoera'a-va'a" canoe race
"hoho'a" photograph, image, likeness
"hoehoni" to bite
"hohero" to run (dl)
"ho'i" to return, in fact
"honu" turtle
"ho'o" to sell
"ho'o-haere" to shop
"hope'a" last, last born
"hopoi" to send, carry
"hopu" to dive, bathe
"hora" time, hour
"horo" to run
"horo pate" passenger
"horo'a" to give
"horōi" to wash
"horohorōi" to wash repeatedly
"hotera" hotel
"hotu" to produce, to bear fruit
"hou" before
"hu'a" small
"huero" egg
"hui" used respectfully of a group of esteemed people
"hui mana" officials
"hui ra'atira" people
"huru" subject, manner, way, method
"huru ātea ātu" further away
"huruhuru" body hair
"hururau" different, diverse
"huti" to pull up, pull

"i" full, to fill
"i'a" fish
"'ia" to steal
"'ia ora na" hello, greetings, goodbye
"'ia vai?" to whom?
"ihora" then
"'i hea?" where?
"ihoa" exactly, in fact
"ihu" nose
"'i'ita" pawpaw
"'i'ita 'otāne" male pawpaw
"'i'ita 'ovahine" female pawpaw
"'imi" to gather, collect, look for
"'i mua mai" in front of
"'i muri iho" after that, next
"'i muri mai" behind
"'i muta'a ihora" at that time, formerly
"'i muta'a iho" formerly
"'ina'i" meat
"'inanahi" yesterday
"'inanahi ātura" the day before yesterday
"'i napō" last night
"'i ni'a" on
"'ino" bad
"inu" to drink
"inu i" drink, toast
"i'oa" name
"'iore" rat
"'i ō vai?" at whose place?
"'i piha'i iho" beside
"'i raro" at the bottom, down
"'i rapae" outside
"'iri" skin
"'iria" to be angry, angry
"'iriti" to translate
"'i ropu" in the middle
"'i roto" into, in, inside
"'i rotopu" among
TAHITIAN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

'ite  to see, to know, to find, to understand, wise
'i tai  towards the sea
'i teie āhiāhi  this afternoon
'i teie nei  now
'i teie nei mahāna  today
'i teie po  this evening
'i teie poipo'i  this morning
'i teie ru'i  tonight
'i teie taine  now
iti  small, few
iitoito  courage
'i uta  at the bottom, towards the land
iva  nine

mA  family group
mā'a  food, white of the coconut, fruit
ma'a  small quantity when applied especially to food, sling
mā'ahia  to become fruitful
mā'e  to lift
maeha'a  twin
maere  to be astonished, exceptional
maeva!  welcome!
maha  four
maha 'ahuru  forty
mahāna  sun, day
mahanahana  warm
mahāna hope'a  the last day
Mahāna Mā'ā  Saturday
Mahāna Maha  Thursday
Mahāna Piti  Tuesday
Mahāna Toru  Wednesday
mahora  to spread open
mahuta  fly, take off
mai  like, as, towards the speaker, with, since, from
mai te mea ē  if, whether
mai te peu ē  if
ma'i hia  to be sick
mai'a  banana
maia'a  mother of an animal
maira  then, there
ma'iri  past (time)
maita'i  good, well
mā'iti  to elect
māmā  light, inexpensive
mamā  mother
mamā ru'au  grandmother
mamoe  sheep
māmu!  be quiet!
māna  authorities
mana'o  to think, hope
manava!  welcome!
maniania  to make a noise, to annoy
manihini  guest
manu  bird
manuia  cheers! good luck! to succeed
manureva  aeroplane
ma'o  shark
ma'ohi  Polynesian
maoro  for a long time, to be late
maorora'a  period, time, length
mara'a  to be raised, to rise
marae  temple, ceremonial place
maramarama  intelligence
mārehurehu  dusk
Marite  America
maro  belt (royal)
marō  dry
māro  to be stubborn
marū  calm, gentle, soft
marua  to fall (leaves)
mata  face, eyes
matahiapo  first-born
matahiti  year
mata'i  wind
māta'iia'i  to look at, admire
matamua  first
matara to become untied, open, to start
mata' u to fear
matau to be accustomed, used to, know
matau hook
mata'eina'a district
matete market
Māti March
mati match
mataro sailor
matie green, grass
mätou we (pl. exc.)
mau plural marker, true, real, to hold
māua we (dl exc.)
maūa' to be wasted
ma'ue to fly
mauiui pain, to ache, to be sad
maurū to thank, thank you
Me May
mea thing
mero member
metua parents
metua tāne father
metua vahine mother
mihi to weep, to lament, grief
mimi cat, to urinate
miniti minute
miti sea
miti popa'a salt
moa Saint
moa fowl
moa oni rooster
moa ufa hen
moana sea, ocean
mo'e to lose, to be forgotten, to forget
moemoea dream
mōhina bottle
momoni Mormon
monamona sweet
moni money

CONVERSATIONAL TAHIITIAN

moni-ho'o price
moni-hu'ahu'a change
Monire Monday
Mo'orea Moorea
mo'otua grandchild
mōri light
mōto motor cycle
moto to fight, brawl
 motu island
 motu raro mata'i Iles Sous le Vent
 mōu'a mountain
 mōri-turama-āva lighthouse
 muto'i police
 mutu to be cut
na the (dl marker), near the addressee
nā benefactive (for), by
nafe'a? how?
nā mua ā'e before
nana flock, herd
nā ni'a in, by
naonao mosquito
nā raro noa on foot
nā ropu between
nā roto by means of
nā vai serves the same purpose as 'o vai but is used only with transitive verbs
nava'i to be sufficient
nehenehe beautiful, to be able
nei near the speaker
ni'au coconut tree leaves
niho tooth
ninamu blue
 Niu Terani New Zealand
nō for, of
noa only, always, still
noa'a to be obtained
noa iatu although
noa iho only
no'ano'a fragrant, perfumed
noho to live, inhabit, sit
nō mātou, nā mātou for us (exc.)
nō māua, nā māua for us two (exc.)
nōna, nāna for him, her
nō 'oe, nā 'oe for you
nō 'ōrua, nā 'ōrua for you two
nō 'outou, nā 'outou for you
nō rātou, nā rātou for them
nō rāua, nā rāua for them two
nō tātou, nā tātou for us (inc.)
nō tāua, nā tāua for us two (inc.)
nō te aha? why?
nō te mea because
nō 'u, nā 'u for me
nō vai, nā vai whose
Novema November
nui big, immense
nu' u army

'o it is (demonstrative), to dig
'oa'oa pleasure, pleasant, to be happy
'oe you
ōe bell
'ō'e sword
ō'e to be in a state of famine
'ofa'i stone, coral
'ofati to break
'ofe bamboo
'ohie easy
'ohipa work, thing
oi almost
ōi to mix
'oi sharp, pointed
'oi to sprain
'oi he, she, it, yes
'oi ho'i namely
'oi'oi quickly
'oire town
'omaha to urinate
'ona he, she, it
one sand

'onei here
ōni indicates male sex in animals
ōno six
ōno 'ahuru sixty
'o'o'a bay
'o'omo to wear, to dress, to put into
'opā'a ripe coconut
'opahi axe
'opani door, to close, finish
ōpe shovel
'opū stomach, heritage
ora to live
'ore without, not, to neglect to
ōri to walk
'ori dance
'orira'a hanahana grand ball
'oro'a feast, festival
'orometua missionary
ōrua you (dl)
ota raw, uncooked
'otāne indicates male sex in trees or plants
'ote'a kind of dance
ōti to finish
'otu'e promontory, point
'oura-miti crayfish
'outou you (pl.)
'ovahine indicates female sex in trees or plants
'o vai? who? which?
'oviri wild, untamed

pa'ari to be hard, mature, stingy
pae five
pa'e male animals mature enough to reproduce or which have already reproduced
pae à'au edge of the reef
pae 'ahuru fifty
pae miti beach
pae moana edge of the lagoon
**CONVERSATIONAL TAHITIAN**

- **pa'e tahatai** sea-shore, beach
- **pafa'i** to gather, pick, pluck
- **pafa'ir'a'a** harvest
- **pāha** wild boar
- **pāha** perhaps
- **pāhere** comb
- **pahi** steamer
- **pahono** to answer
- **pa'imi** to look for
- **painu** to float in the sea
- **pana** to dig around, scoop
- **pa'o'a** kind of dance
- **papa'a** crab
- **pāpā'i** to write
- **papa ru'au** grandfather
- **pape** water
- **papū** flat, firmly, to be sure
- **papu'a** to wash
- **para** ripe
- **parahi** to sit, goodbye
- **parahira'a** chair
- **parapara'au** to converse
- **parara'a** the ripening
- **parari** to break, smash
- **pārataito** paradise
- **parau** to converse, to speak, word, talk
- **pārāu** pearl-shell
- **parau 'api** news
- **parau tahito** legend
- **paraupara'au** to chat
- **pareu** loin-cloth
- **paru** bait
- **pāruru** wall
- **pata** to take a photo
- **pātia** to spear (a fish), to prick
- **pātia -mā'a** fork
- **pātia'atia** to prick several times
- **patiri** to thunder
- **pāto'i** to refuse
- **pau** to be consumed
- **pa'uma** to climb up
- **pauroa** all

- **pe'a'ape'a** trouble, nuisance, to be sorry
- **pe'etā** a bunch still attached to a branch
- **pēni-pāpā'i** ballpoint pen, pen
- **pepa** pepper
- **pepe** butterfly, baby
- **pēpē** to wound
- **pere'o'o** taxi, car
- **pere'o'o uira** car
- **peretiti'i** Presidency
- **petania** Bethany Church
- **pe'ue mat**
- **pi** unripe
- **pia** beer
- **piha** room
- **piha'i iho** beside
- **piharahara** to open up
- **pī'i** to call
- **pī'ifare** cat
- **pinepine** often
- **pinia** indicates the young of sheep (lambs)
- **pipi** to water
- **piripou** trousers
- **piti** two
- **piti 'ahuru** twenty
- **piti 'ahuru ma hō'e** twenty-one
- **pō** evening, night
- **pohe** to die, to be ill
- **pō'ia** to be hungry
- **pō'ihā** to be thirsty
- **pō'ipo'i** morning
- **pō'ipo'iroa** early in the morning
- **pō'o'a** to make a noise
- **popa'a** foreigner, European
- **popo** ball
- **poro** to make an announcement, corner
- **pōro** marble, ball
- **porote** to walk in procession
- **porotetani** Protestant
- **poti** boat
pōti'i  girl
poto  short (sing.)
pou  pillar, to descend
pū  principal, trumpet, main,
    source, centre
pu'a  coral, soap
pu'a  pig
pu'a fanau'a  piglet
pu'a'ahorofenua  horse
pu'a'maia'a  sow (pig)
pu'a'aniho  goat
pu'a'atoro  cattle
pu'e  strength, strong
pu'e collection of men, animals,
    food
pūha  copra
puhi  eel
puhipuhi  to smoke
pu'ohu  to wrap up, packet
pupā  bunch, usually of smaller
    fruits
pupu  group
pūpū  sea-shell
purau  kind of tree (Hibiscus
    tiliaceus)
pure  to pray
purera'a  prayer
purotu  handsome
purumu  street
puta  book
pūte  sack, bag, suitcase
putuputu  to assemble
ra  far from the speaker
ra'atira  chief
rā'au  tree, medicine
rahi  big, very
rahira'a  majority, quantity
ra'i  sky
raitī  rice
rama  to fish at night
rāri  wet
rata  letter
rātere  tourist
rātou  they
rau  numerous
rāua  they (dl)
rava'āi  fishing
rāu'e're  leaf
rava'i  to be sufficient
rave  to do, make, take
raverahi  many
raverau  many
raverave  to manipulate
rē  to be victorious, to win, prize
re'are'a  yellow
reira  that (which has been pre-
    viously mentioned)
reo  language, voice
repera  leper
repo  earth, soil, dirty
repo puehu  dust
rere  to fly (of a plane)
rereva  to leave (dl)
reva  to leave, depart, go, the
    sky, flag
ri'i  a little
rima  hand, arm
riro  to become, to be taken pos-
    session of
roa  long, very, never
roa'a  to catch, obtain
rohirohi  tired, fatigued
ro'i  bed
roimata  tears
Ronetona  London
roto (i)  in, inside
rotopu  among
rouru  hair of the head
rū  to hurry, rush
ru'au  old person
ru'i  night (Biblical)
ruperupe  beauty
ruru  bundle or collection of
    something tied with rope or
    liana
tä- causative formative with the meaning “to put something to use”
ta’a to be certain, to know how to, chin, jaw
ta’a’era’a farewell
ta’aero bad, poison, drunk
ta’ahira’a-pere’o’o bicycle race
tä’amu to tie
ta’ata man, person
ta’ata-fa’ahoro-pere’o’o taxi-driver

ta’atahia to become populous
ta’ata-päpa’i-hoho’a artist
tae to arrive, come
taea’e brother (general)
taera’a arrival
taere slow, slowly
tahatai beach, shore
tahi a, another
tahua floor
tahua taura’a manureva airport
tahuna to hide
tai towards the open sea
tai’i to cry
tai’a to fish
tai’ara’a fishing
taiete society, company
taiha’a purchase
taime time
tai’o to read, count
ta’iri to hit, beat
tämä’ara’a feast
tämä’ara’a’ta manureva airport
tamahi daughter, girl
tamahi-ho’oko’o shop assistant
tamaiti child (male), son
tamari’i child (general)
tamäroa small boy, son
tämata to try, attempt
tämau to hold, learn thoroughly, make fast, put on
tämuta fare carpenter
tänne indicates male sex with persons
tanito Sanito Church
tänimui to telephone
tano to be right
tanu to plant, bury
tao’a gift, present
ta’o’oto to sleep (dl)
taora to throw
taorapopo basketballer
taote niho dentist
taote rā’au doctor
ta’oto to sleep
tapae to land
tapapa to pursue
taparahi to kill
tāparu to beg
Tapati Sunday
tapau lead-weight
tāpe’a to stop, look after, hold
tāpo’i to cover
tapona knot
taponi to abandon
tapu to forbid
tāpū to cut
tāpūpū to cut in two
tara horn
tāra five francs CFP
tārahu to rent, hire, bill
tari’a ear
taro taro
tātā’i to repair
tataio short
tataara to remove, dig up
tatarahapa to repent
tātihota to sugar
	tatorita Catholic
	tātou we (pl. inc.)
tautau time, occasion, season, period

tăua . . . ra may be used with approximately the same mean-
ing as tēra (that)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tahitian Word</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>taui</td>
<td>to change, turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tauiha'a</td>
<td>baggage, suitcase, present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāupo'o</td>
<td>hat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taura</td>
<td>race or breed of men, of animals, rope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tau na</td>
<td>restricted plural article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taura'i</td>
<td>to dry in the sun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taure'are'a</td>
<td>youth, teenager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta'urua</td>
<td>fishing, to fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tautai</td>
<td>to help</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tavana</td>
<td>mayor, chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tavana rahi</td>
<td>Governor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taviri</td>
<td>to film, to close, key, game</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te</td>
<td>the (definite article)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teata</td>
<td>cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tehia?</td>
<td>which one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teiāha</td>
<td>heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teie</td>
<td>this (near the speaker)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tei hea?</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teina</td>
<td>younger sibling (same sex)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teitei</td>
<td>high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēna</td>
<td>that (near the person addressed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenuare</td>
<td>January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tēra</td>
<td>that (not near the speakers)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tere</td>
<td>to go past, to travel, voyage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetepa</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti'a</td>
<td>to stand up, be able</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tia'a</td>
<td>shoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiahi</td>
<td>to chase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tia'i</td>
<td>to wait (for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiare</td>
<td>flower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tihota</td>
<td>sugar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ti'i</td>
<td>statue, image, to pick, to gather, to get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tinito</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tino</td>
<td>body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tipi</td>
<td>knife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiro</td>
<td>kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tita</td>
<td>guitar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Titema</td>
<td>December</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>titeti</td>
<td>ticket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>titiro rata</td>
<td>postage stamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiunu</td>
<td>June</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiurai</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō</td>
<td>sugar-cane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>to remain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to'eto'e</td>
<td>cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tohora</td>
<td>whale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō'i</td>
<td>axe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō mātou, tā mātou</td>
<td>our (pl. exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō māua, tā māua</td>
<td>our (dl exc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomo</td>
<td>to enter, sink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōna, tāna</td>
<td>his, her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tono</td>
<td>to send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō 'oe, tā 'oe</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to'ohia?</td>
<td>how many?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō 'oru, tā 'oru</td>
<td>your (dl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō 'outou, tā 'outou</td>
<td>your (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topa</td>
<td>to give a name to, to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topara'a-pape</td>
<td>waterfall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō rātou, tā rātou</td>
<td>their (pl.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō rāua, tā rāua</td>
<td>their (dl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toro</td>
<td>to extend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toro'a</td>
<td>job, trade, occupation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toru</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toru 'ahuru</td>
<td>thirty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō tātou, tā tātou</td>
<td>our (pl. inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō tāua, tā tāua</td>
<td>our (dl inc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>totini</td>
<td>sock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toto</td>
<td>blood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tō'u, tā'u</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tua'ana</td>
<td>elder sibling (same sex)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tua'hi</td>
<td>sister (of a boy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu'an</td>
<td>sister (of a girl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tu'epopo</td>
<td>footballer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuha'a</td>
<td>point, promontory, part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumu</td>
<td>trunk of a tree, reason, root</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumu ha'ari</td>
<td>coconut tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumu rā'au</td>
<td>tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tumu 'uru</td>
<td>breadfruit tree</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
conversational tahitian

tunu to prepare, cook

tupa‘i to kill, hit

tupohē to kill, put out a light

tupu to be present, grow, take place

ture law

tutau anchor

tute tax

tutu kind of tree

tu‘u to put in, deposit, let down, put down

ū milk

‘ua past tense marker

‘ūa rain, to rain

‘ū'a kind of crab

‘u‘ā to bloom

uāhu wharf

uaina wine

uāti watch

ueue to shake

ufa indicates female sex in animals

ūfi yam

uiro electricity

‘umara sweet potato

‘uo‘uo white, clean

‘upe‘a net

ūpo‘o head

‘ura red

‘uri dog

‘uri fanau‘a puppy

‘uri ēni dog

‘uri ufa bitch

‘uru breadfruit

ūru ‘anani orange plantation

uta inland, towards the interior

‘utara to weed, clean up

‘ute‘ute red

va‘a outrigger canoe

vaha mouth

vāhi place, area

vāhi fa‘ari‘ira‘a reception area

vāhi himenera‘a nightclub

vahie wood

vahine woman

vahine fa‘aipoipo wife

vai to be, to exist, fresh water

vaiho to put, place, leave

vanira vanilla

vau I

va‘u eight

ve‘a newspaper

ve‘ave‘a hot

vera those people (about whom one has spoken)

vetahi some, others

vi mango

vine grapes

vinivini to tickle

vitiviti skill, quickly
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A, an</td>
<td>te hō'e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abandon (to)</td>
<td>taponi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>able (to be)</td>
<td>nehenehe, ti'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accept (to)</td>
<td>fa'ariro, fa'arī'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accompany (to)</td>
<td>fa'a'ati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accustomed (to be)</td>
<td>mātau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ache</td>
<td>mauiui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admire (to)</td>
<td>māta'ita'i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adopt (to)</td>
<td>fa'a'amu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aeroplane</td>
<td>manureva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after that, after, next</td>
<td>'i muru ihora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afternoon (this)</td>
<td>'i teie āhiāhi, āvatea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again</td>
<td>fa'ahou, ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>airport</td>
<td>tahua taura'a manureva</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>pauroa, pa'ato'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>oi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone</td>
<td>āna'e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>already</td>
<td>ēna, ē'e nei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also, as well</td>
<td>āna'e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td>'ato'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>although</td>
<td>noa ātu ā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always</td>
<td>noa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td>Marite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>among</td>
<td>'i rotopu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amusement</td>
<td>'arearea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anchor</td>
<td>tutau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angry</td>
<td>'iria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annoy (to)</td>
<td>ha'ape'a'pe'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another</td>
<td>te tahi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer (to)</td>
<td>pahono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>applaud (to)</td>
<td>ha'apoupou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>apara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>April</td>
<td>Eperera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>rima</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>army</td>
<td>nu'u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>'e 'ati noa ātu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrange, place (to)</td>
<td>'atu'atu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival</td>
<td>taera'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrive (to), come</td>
<td>tae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>artist</td>
<td>ta'ata-pāpā'i-hoho'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ashamed (to make)</td>
<td>fa'a'ha'amā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ask (to)</td>
<td>āni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assemble (to)</td>
<td>putuputu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assistant</td>
<td>tamāhine-ho'oho'o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assure (to)</td>
<td>ha'apapū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astonished (to be)</td>
<td>maere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>athlete</td>
<td>fa'a'eta'eta tino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attach, make fast (to)</td>
<td>tāmau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at that time</td>
<td>'i muta'a ihora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>August</td>
<td>Atete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>Auteraria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorities</td>
<td>mana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorise (to)</td>
<td>ha'amana</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away from the speaker</td>
<td>ātu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>axe</td>
<td>to'i, 'opahi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>'aiū, pepe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad (sing.)</td>
<td>'ino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dl and pl.)</td>
<td>'i'ino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag</td>
<td>pūte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baggage, suitcase</td>
<td>tauha'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bait</td>
<td>paru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ball</td>
<td>popo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bamboo</td>
<td>'ofe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banana</td>
<td>mai'a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>fare moni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bar</td>
<td>fare imura'a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
basket 'ete
basketballer taorapopo
bathe (to) hopu
bay 'o'o'a
be (to) vai
beach pae tahatai
beautiful pae tahatai
beauty ruperupe
because nō te mea
become (to), to be taken riro
bed ro'i
beer pia
before nā mua ā'e, nā mua 'e, hou 'a
begin (to) ha'amata
behind 'i muri mai
bell òe
believe fa'aro'o
belt (royal) maro
bend (to) ha'afefe
beside 'i piha'i iho
between nā ropu
be used to (to) mātau
bicycle race ta'ahira'a pere'o'o
big (sing.) rahi, nui
bill tārahu
bird manu
bitch (a) 'uri ufa
bite (to) hohoni
black 'ere'ere
blood toto
bloom 'ūā
blue ninamu
boar (wild) pua'a pa'e
boat poti
body tino
boil (a) fēfē
boil (to) ha'apihā
book puta
bore (to) ha'afiu
bottle mōhina
bottom (at the bottom) 'i raro
box afata
boy tamāroa
branch 'ama'a
bread farāoa
breadfruit 'uru
breadfruit tree tumu'uru
break (to) 'ofati, fati
break, smash (to) parari, ha'aparāri
breeding fa'a'amura'a
bring near (to) fa'a'afatata
broil (to) ha'apa'apa'a
broken (to be) fati
brother taea'e
build (to) hamani
bunch of fruit atari
bunch (a) still attached to a branch pe'etā
bunch (a) usually of smaller fruits pupā
bundle of goods tied but containing only same article in the one bundle 'amui
bundle or collection of something tied with rope or liana ruru
butterfly pepe
buy (to) ho'o mai
by mai, 'i, 'e
call (to) pi'i
calm marū
canoe va'a
canoe (outrigger) va'a
canoe race hoera'a-va'a
car pere'o'o uria
carpenter tāmuta fare
carry (to) āmo, hopoi
cat mimi, pi'ifare
catch, obtain (to) roa'a
Catholics tatorita
cattle pua'atoro
celebrate (to) fa'ahanahana
celebration 'oro'a
certain (to be) ta'a
chair parahira'a
champion  aito
change moni-hu'ahu'a
change (to) taui
chase (to) tiahi
chat (to) parauparau
cheap māmā
cheers! manuia!
chew 'au
chief ra'atira, tavana
child (general) tamari'i
child (male) tamaiti
Chinese tinito
chop (to) täpū
close (to) fa'a'ati
clothes 'ahu
coconut ha'ari
coconut (ripe) 'opa'a
cold to'eto'e
collection of men, animals, foods pu'e
comb pāhere
come (to) haere mai
comparative degree ā'e
conclude (to), end fa'a'oti
consume (to) ha'apau
consumed (to be) pau
convert (to) parau
cook (to) tunu
cook (a) tūtu
copra pūha
coral 'ofa'i, pu'a
country fenua
courage itoito
cover (to) täpo'i
cover up (to) ha'apo'i
crab papā'a
crayfish  'oura-miti
crumple (to) ha'ami'omi'o
cry (to) ta'i
cut (to) tāpū
cut in two (to) tāpūpū
dance (to) 'ori
dead (to be) pohe
debase (to) ha'afoafau
December Titema
delay (to) ha'amaoro
dentist taote niho
depart (to) reva
department a'ihu'ara'a'u
deposit (to) hava'i
descend (to) pou
describe parau
die (to) pohe
die (to cause to die) ha'apohe
different ê
difficult atā
difficulties (to be in) fifi
dig (to) 'o
dig around (to) pana
dig up (to) tatara
dirty repo
disaster 'ati
discover (to) ha'amaheu
disperse (to) ha'amaria
distant, far away ātea
district mata'eina'a
dive (to) hopu
do (to) rave
doctor taote rā'au
dog 'uri
don't rush! 'eiaha 'e rū!
door 'opani
down 'i raro
dream moemoea
dress, clothes 'ahu
drink (to) inu
drink, toast imuinura'a
drive (to) fa'a'ahoro
drunk ta'aero
dry maro
dry in the sun (to) taurā'i
duration maorora'a
dusk mārehurehu
dust repo puehu

eager 'ana'anatae
ear tari'a
early morning a'ahiāta
early in the morning 'i te po'ipo'i roa
earth, soil repo
easy 'ohie
eat (to) 'amu
eat at table (to) tāmā'a
edge of the lagoon pae moana
edge of the reef pae ā'au
eel puki
egg huero
eight va'u
eighteen hō'e 'ahuru ma va'u
elect (to) mā'iti
electricity uira
eleven hō'e 'ahuru ma hō'e
embellish (to) fa'anehenehe
enclosure 'aua
enough atira

ensemble, entire group of people engaged in some activity feiā
entangle (to) ha'afifi
enter (to) tomo
establish (to) ha'ama'a
etcetera e te vai ātura, e raverahi ātu ā
European popa'a
evening (this) 'i teie pō
exceptional maere
exist, to be vai
explain (to) fa'a'ite, ha'amara-mamaka
extend (to) toro
eye mata

face mata
fall topa, ma'iri
family fēti'i
famine (to be in a state of) ā'e
fanfare fa'ata'ira'a pū
far ātea
far from the speaker ra
farmer fa'a'apu
father metua tāne
fear (to) mata'u
feast tāmā'ara'a
feast, festival 'oro'a, ta'urua
February Fepuare
feminine of animals ufa
feminine of trees and plants 'olvahine
fence 'aua
few 'aita re'a
fifteen hō'e 'ahuru ma pae
fifth a pae
fifty pae 'ahuru
fight (to) moto
fill (to) fa'a'i
film (to) taviri
find (to) 'ite
finish (to) otti, fa'a'oti, pau (offood)
fire āuahi
first a tahi, matamua
first-born matahiapo
fish i’a
fish (to) tāi’a
fisherman tā’ata-tāi’a
fishing rava’ai, tā’ara’a, rama
five pae
five francs CFP tāra
flag reva
flat papū
float (to) painu
flock, herd nana
floor tahua
flower tiare
fly (to) ma’ue, mahuta, rere
food mā’a
footballer ta’ata-tu’epopo
forbid (to) tapu
foreigner popa’a
forget, lose (to) ha’amo’e
forgotten (to be) mo’e
for nō, nā
fork pōtia-mā’a
formerly ‘i muta’a iho
fortunately auā’e
forty maha ‘ahuru
for what reason? ‘e aha te tumu?
four maha
fourteen hō’e ‘ahuru ma maha
fourth a maha
fowl moa
fragrant no’ano’o’a
franc farāne
France Farāni
Friday Faraire
friend hoa
from mai
front (in) ‘i mua mai
fruit mā’a
full (to be) ‘i
further away huru ātea ātu
game ha’utī
garland hei
gather (to) pafa’i
gather, collect (to) ‘imi
gather together (to) ha’apu’e
gather up (to) ha’aputu
get (to) ti’i, rave
gift tao’a
girl pōti’i
give (to) horo’a
glass hi’o, hapaina
go (to) haere
goat pua’aniho
God atua
good maita’i
go past (to) tere
good morning ‘ia ora na
government hau
Governor tavana rahī
grandchild mo’otua
grandfather papa ru’au
grandmother mamā ru’au
grape vine
grass matie
grate (to) ‘ana
green matie
greet (to) āroha
greetings! ‘ia ora na!
ground fenua
group pupu
grow (to) tupu
guest manihini
guitar tīta
hair (head) rouru
hair (body) huruhuru
half āfa
hammer hamara
hand rimā
handsome purotu
happy (to be) ‘oa’oa
hard, mature (to be) pa’ari
hasten (to) ha’ape’epē’e
hat tāūpo'o
he, him 'oia, 'ona
head īpo'o
heap up (to) ha'aputu
hear (to) fa'aro'o
heavy teiāha
hello! 'ia ora na!
help (to) tauturu
hen moa ufa
here 'onei
hibiscus 'aute
hide (to) tahuna
high teitei
hire (to) tārahu
his, her tōna, tāna
hit (to) ta'iri
hold (to) mau, tāmau, tāpe'a
hole 'apo'o
holiday fa'afa'aeara'a
hook matau
hope (to) mana'o
horse pua'ahorofenua
hospital fare ma'i
hot ve'ave'a
hotel hōtera
hour hora
house fare
how? nafea?
how are things? 'e aha te huru?
however āre'a ra
how many? 'ehia?, to'ohia?
how much? 'ehia moni?
hungry (to be) po'ia
hunt (to) āuā'u, ā'u
hurry (to) rū

I au, vau
if mai te peu ē, mai te mea ē
ill (to be) pohe 'i te ma'i
immense nui
import (to) fa'atae
in, inside 'i roto, nā ni'a
increase (to) fa'arava'i

information fa'a'itera'a
intelligence maramarama
interrogative marker anei
in the middle 'i ropu
into 'i roto
introduce (to) fa'afarerei
it is (demonstrative article) 'o, 'e

key taviri
kill (to) ha'apohe
kill (to), extinguish tupohē
kilogram tiro
king ari'i
knife tipi
knot tapona
know (to) 'ite, mātau

lagoon pae moana
lamb pinia mamoe
land fenua
land (to) tapce
language reo
last hope'a
last day mahāna hope'a
laugh (to) 'ata
law ture
lead-weight tapau
leaf rau'e rā'au
learn (to) ha'api'i
leave (to) reva
Leeward Islands motu raro
mata'i
leg 'avae
legend 'a'amu, parau tahitō
length maorora'a
leper repera
let down (to) (net) tu'u
letter rata
level (to make) ha'amānina
level, assure (to) ha'apapū
lie (to) ha'aware
lie down (to) ta'oto
lift (to) mā'e
light mōri
lighthouse mōri-turama-āva
like (to) hina'aro
like, as mai
listen to (to) fa'aro'o
little iti
little (a) ri'i
live (to) ora, noho
loin-cloth pareu
London Rone'ona
long roa
long time maoro
look after (to) tápe'a
look at (to) māta'ita'i, hi'o
look for (to) pa'imi, 'imi
lose (to) ha'amo'e, mo'e
love (to) here

main pū
majority rahira'a
make (to) rave
make a noise (to) po'o'a
man ta'ata
mango vi
manipulate (to) raverave
manner huru
many 'e raverahi, 'e raverau
marble pōro
March Māti
market mātete
mat pe'ue
match mati
May Mē
mayor tavana
me 'ia'u
meat 'ina'i
medicine rā'au
meet (to) farerei
member mero
middle (in the) 'i ropu
milk ū
minute miniti
mirror hi'o

missionary 'orometua
mistake hape
mix (to) ōi
Monday Monire
money moni
month 'ava'e
moon 'ava'e
Moorea Mo'orea
Mormon momoni
morning po'ipo'i
morning (this) 'i teie po'ipo'i
mosquito naonao
mother metua vahine
mountain mou'a
mouth vaha
my tō'u, tā'u

name i'oa
name (to) topa
namely 'oia ho'i
near the addressee na
near the speaker nei
neck 'arapo'a
negative imperative 'eiaha
net 'upe'a
never 'aita roa ātu
new 'api
news parau 'apī
newspaper ve'a
New Zealand Niu Terani
nice āu
night ru'i, pō
night (last) 'i napō
nightclub vāhi orira'a
nine iva
nineteen hō'e 'ahuru ma iva
no 'aita
noise (to make a) maniania
no more fa'ahou
November Novema
now 'i teie taimē, 'i teie nei
number numera
numerous rau
observe, see (to) hi’o
obtain (to) roa’a, noa’a
obtained (to be) roa’a, noa’a
occupation toro’a
October Atopa
officials hui mana
often pinepine
old person ru’aou
on ‘i ni’a
once more fa’ahou
one hō’e, tahi
one hundred hō’e hanere
one hundred and one hō’e hanere ma hō’e
one thousand hō’e tauatini
on foot nā raro noa
only āna’e, noa
open (to) matara, ‘iriti
open up (to) piharahara
or ‘aore ra
orchestra pupu-fa’a’arearea
organise (to) fa’atupu
orange ‘anani
orange plantation ūru ‘anani
other te tahi
our (dl exc.) tō māua, tā māua
our (dl inc.) tō tāua, tā tāua
our (pl. exc.) tō mātou, tā mātou
our (pl. inc.) tō tātou, tā tātou
outrigger canoe va’a
outside ‘i rapae

packet pu’ohu
paddle (to) hoe
page ‘api
pain (to inflict) ha’amauui, mauiui
panic (don’t) ‘eiaha ‘e rū
paper ‘api-parau
paper bag fa’ari’i
paradise parataito
parcel afata tauha’a
parent metua

pass (to) hemo
passenger horo-patete
passage (reef) āva
patient (to be) fa’amahu
pawpaw ‘i’ita
pay (to) ‘aufau
pearl-shell pārau
pearl-shell merchants feiā-rave-pārau
pen pēni-pāpa’i
people hui ra’atira
pepper pepa
perhaps ‘e riro paha
period ārea
period, time maorora’a
person ta’ata
pursue (to) tapapa
photo hoho’a
pick (to) ti’i
pick, pluck (to) pafa’i
pierce (to) ha’aputa
pig pua’a
piglet pua’a fanau’a
place vāhi
place (to take) tupu
plane manureva
plant (to) tanu
plantation fa’a’apu
play (to) ha’uti
pleased (to be) ‘oa’oa
pleasure, delight ‘oa’oa, ‘arearea
point, promontory (the) ‘otu’e
pointed ‘oi
poison ta’aero
police muto’i
pollenate (to) fa’atito
Polynesian ma’ohi
population hui ra’atira
post pou
post (to) hapono
postage stamp titiro rata
post office fare rata
pray (to) pure
prayer purera'a
pregnant hapū
prepare (to) tunu, ineine
present ta'o'a
presidency peretiteni
price moni-ho'o
prick (to) pātia, ti'i
prick several times (to) pātiatia
principal pū
prison fare 'auri
prize re
produce, bear fruit (to) hotu
promontory, point 'otu'e
Protestant porotetani
pull, pull up (to) huti
punish (to) ha'avi, fa'ahapa
puppy 'uri fanau'a
purchase tauiha'a
put (to) vaiho
put down (to) tu'u
put, deposit (to) hava'i
put in a bag (to) 'omo
quantity rahira'a
queen āri'i vahine
quickly 'oi'oi, viti viti
race fa'ahororō'a
race, breed taura
rafter 'aho
rain (to) ūa
raised (to be) mara'a
rat 'iore
raw ota
razor hahu
read (to) tai'o
reason tumu
receive (to) fa'ari'i
reception area vāhi fa'ari'ira'a
red 'ura
reef ā'au
refuse (to) pāto'i
religion fa'aro'o
remain (to) fa'aea, toe
remove (to) tatara
rent (to) tārāhu
repair (to) tātā'i
repent (to) tatarahapa
reserve, remain (to) fa'aea
restaurant fare tāmā'ara'a
return (to) ho'i
rice raiti
right (to be) tano
ripe para
rise (to) mara'a
river anavai
roast (to) ha'apa'apa'a
room piha
rooster moa ōni
rope taura
round (to make) ha'amemeneme
row (to) hoe
royal family āri'i
run (to) horo, hohoro (dl)
sack, bag pūte
sad (to be) mauui
sailor mataro
salt miti popa'a
sand one
Sanito Church tanito
Saturday Mahāna Mā'a
scatter (to) ha'apurara
school fare ha'api'ira'a
scoop (to) pana
sea miti, moana
sea-shell pūpū
sea-shore pae tahatai
season tau
second a piti
see (to) 'ite
seize (to) haru
sell (to) ho'o atu
send (to) hapono, hopoi, tono
September Tetepa
seven hitu
seventeen hō'e 'ahuru ma hitu
shake (to) ueue
shark ma'o
sharp 'oi
shave (to) hahu
sheep mamoe
shell necklace hei-pūpū
shine (to) 'ana'ana
shirt 'ahu, 'a'ahu 'o'omo
shoe tia'a
shop fare toa
shop (to) ho'o-haere
shop assistant tamähine-ho'oho'o
short poto
shorten (to) ha'apoto
shovel öpe
sick (to be) ma'i hia
signal, tell (to) fa'a'ite
since mai te mahāna
sing (to) himene
sink a post (to) fa'ati'a
sister (of a boy) tuahine
sit (to) noho 'i raro, parahi
six ōno
sixteen hō'e 'ahuru ma ōno
sixty ōno 'ahuru
skill vitiviti
sky ra'i, reva
sleep (to) ta'oto
sling ma'a
slowly, slow taere
small iti, hu'a
smoke (to) puhipuhi
society, company taiete
sock totini
soft marū
soldier fa'e'ehau
son tamaiti, tamāroa
song himene
soon fatata
sorry (to be) pe'a'ape'a
sow (female pig) pu'a maia'a
sour 'ava'ava
speak (to) parau
spear (to) pāitia
spear 'auri
spill (to) ha'amani'i
sprain 'o'i
spread open (to) mahora
stall, liana 'ata
stand up (to) ti'a
star feti'a
stare (to) hi'ohi'o
start (to) matara
start, commence (to) ha'amata
start, startle (to) hitimahuta
statue ti'i
stay (to) fa'aea
stay, holiday fa'a'aea'ara'a
steal (to) 'ia, 'eia
steamer pa'hī
stick 'ama'a rā'au
still noa
stir (to) fa'arapu
stomach 'opū
stone 'ofa'i
stop (to) tāpe'a, fa'a'afa'aea
straight 'afaro
straighten (to) tāpe'a, fa'a'afa'aea
strength puai
strength (to exert) ha'apuai
strong puai
stubborn māro
subject huru
succeed (to) manuia
sufficient (to be) rava'i, nava'i
sugar tihota
sugar-cane tō
suitcase tauha'a, pūte
sun mahāna
Sunday Tapati
sure (to be) papū
surpassed (to be) hemo
surround (to) fa'a'āti
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sweet</td>
<td>monamona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweetheart</td>
<td>here</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweet potato</td>
<td>'umara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim (to)</td>
<td>ʻau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword</td>
<td>ʻoʻe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table</td>
<td>ʻamuraʻamāʻa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take (to)</td>
<td>rave mai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take off (to) (plane)</td>
<td>mahuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk, converse (to)</td>
<td>parauparau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taro</td>
<td>taro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi, car</td>
<td>pereʻoʻo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taxi-driver</td>
<td>taʻata-faʻahoro-pereʻoʻo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tears</td>
<td>roimata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>telephone (to)</td>
<td>tāniuniu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell, explain (to)</td>
<td>faʻaʻite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td>marae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ten</td>
<td>hōʻe ʻahuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrify (to)</td>
<td>faʻamataʻu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Territorial Assembly</td>
<td>Apoʻoraʻa Rahi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank (to)</td>
<td>maurūru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank you!</td>
<td>maurūru!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that (not near the speakers)</td>
<td>tēra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that (near the person addressed)</td>
<td>tēna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thatch (to)</td>
<td>āto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their (dl)</td>
<td>tō rāua, tā rāua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their (pl.)</td>
<td>tō rātou, tā rātou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>then</td>
<td>ihora, ātura, ʻi muri iho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they (pl.)</td>
<td>rātou, rāua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thief</td>
<td>ʻeia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>mea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think (to)</td>
<td>manaʻo, feruri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>a toru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirsty (to be)</td>
<td>poʻiha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirteen</td>
<td>hōʻe ʻahuru ma toru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>toru ʻahuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>teie</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>these</td>
<td>teie mau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>toru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw (to)</td>
<td>taora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thunder (to)</td>
<td>patiri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thursday</td>
<td>Mahāna Maha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ticket</td>
<td>titeti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie (to)</td>
<td>tāʻamu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time, hour</td>
<td>hora, taime, tau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tired</td>
<td>rohirohi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>'i teie nei mahāna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toilet</td>
<td>fare iti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>'ananahi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow evening</td>
<td>'ananahi ia' pō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow morning</td>
<td>'ananahi ia poʻipoʻi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonight</td>
<td>'i teie ru'i, 'i teie pō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>niho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tour (to)</td>
<td>faʻaʻati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tourist</td>
<td>rātere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>'oire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town hall</td>
<td>fare hau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toy</td>
<td>haʻuti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translate (to)</td>
<td>ʻiriti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport (to)</td>
<td>ʻafaʻi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel (to)</td>
<td>tere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tree</td>
<td>tumu rāʻau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trip</td>
<td>tere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trouble</td>
<td>peʻapeʻa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trousers</td>
<td>piripou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true, real</td>
<td>mau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trumpet</td>
<td>pū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunk of a tree</td>
<td>tumu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try (to)</td>
<td>tāmata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
<td>Mahāna Piti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turtle</td>
<td>honu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>hōʻe ʻahuru ma piti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty</td>
<td>piti ʻahuru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twenty-one</td>
<td>piti ʻahuru ma hōʻe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twin</td>
<td>maehaʻa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twisted</td>
<td>fefe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two</td>
<td>piti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>under</td>
<td>'i raro ōʻe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand (to)</td>
<td>ʻite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
unless maori ra
unripe pi
untie (to) ha'amatara
until 'e tae ātu, 'a tae roa ātu
U.S.A. Marite

valley fā'a
vanilla vanira
very rahi, roa
victorious (to be) rē
visit, admire (to) māta'ī'ta'i
visit, tour (to) fa'a'ati
voice reo
vomit (to) ha'apiha'e
voyage tere

wait for (to) tia'i
wake up (to) āra
walk (to) ōri haere
walk in procession (to) porote
wall paruru
want (to) hina'aro
warm mahana'hana
warn (to) ā'o
wash (to) horōi
wash repeatedly (to) horohorōi
waste (to) ha'amau'a
wasted (to be) mau'a
watch uāti
watch (to) hi'o
water pape, vai
water (to) pīpī
waterfall topara'a-pape
way, method huru
wave 'are miti
we (dl exc.) māua
we (dl inc.) tāua
we (pl. exc.) mātou
we (pl. inc.) tātou
wear (to) 'o'omo
weary fiu
weave (to) ha'one

Wednesday Mahāna Toru
weed (to) 'utaru
week hepotoma
weep, lament (to) mihi
weigh (to) faito, fa'afaito
weight tapau
welcome! manava!, haere mai!
well maita'i
wet haumi, rari
whale tohora
wharf vāhu
what? 'e aha?
when? afe'a?, ahea?, anafe'a?,
        inafe'a?, 'i anafe'a?
where? tei hea? 'i hea?
where to? 'i hea?
where from? mai hea mai?
which? 'o vai?, tehia?
whistle (to) hio
white 'uo'uo
who? 'o vai?
whose? nō vai?, nā vai?
whose place (at)? 'i ō vai?
whom? (to) 'ia vai?
why? 'e aha? nō te aha?
wife vahine fa'aipoipo
win (to) rē
wind mata'i
window ha'amaramarama
wine uaina
wise 'ite
with mai, e, nā muri iho
without 'ore
woman vahine
wood vahie
word parau
work 'ohipa
world āo
wound (to) pepe
wrap up (to) pu'ohu
write (to) pāpā'i
writing-paper 'api-parau
wrong (to be) hape
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Tahitian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yam</td>
<td>ʻūfi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>year</td>
<td>matahiti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>reʻareʻa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yes</td>
<td>e, ʻoia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>ʻinanahi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>ʻoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you (dl)</td>
<td>ʻorua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you (pl.)</td>
<td>ʻoutou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young (the offspring of animals)</td>
<td>fanauʻa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>tō ʻoe, ūa ʻoe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your (dl)</td>
<td>tō ʻorua, ūa ʻorua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your (pl.)</td>
<td>tō ʻoutou, ūa ʻoutou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>youth</td>
<td>tamariʻi, taureʻareʻa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

(references are to sections)

a, 11
'ā, 36
ability, 123
accompaniment, 84
active verbs, 46
adjectives, 23–8
ā'e, 25
afa'a, 100
after, 77
again, 78
agent, 47
ahiri, 130
ai, 46 (a, ix), 81, 98
'aitea, 56
'aitea, 60
all, 27
already, 78
'amui, 13
āna'e, 28
anafe'a, 100
anet, 93, 114
'aore, 56
'aore a, 60
'aore ra, 133
'aore re'a, 72
Apetahi Flower, 141
Arrival in Tahiti, 92
articles, 11–13
at, 80
'atā, 13
atari, 13
'ato'a, 27
attempted action, 125
attributive, 66
ātu, 81
ātura, 77
base, 49
be, 70
because, 88
before, 77
benefactive, 83
Breadfruit Legend, 144
by whom?, 95
can, 123
cardinal numbers, 15, 16
causative verbs, 49–51
cause, 88
changing modifiers, 24
common nouns, 44
common noun possessors, 38
comparative, 25, 26
competence, 124
completed action, 46(a, viii)
conditional, 130
conjunctions, 133
consonants, 1
collection, 104
Copra, 119
days of the week, 18
demonstratives, 30–4
dependent clauses, 105–17
desiderative, 128
diphthongs, 4
direction, 81
distant past, 46(a, vi)
dual, 12
dual form of verb, 53
e (with), 84
ē, 115
'e (article), 11
'e (by), 47, 95
'e (future), 46(a, ix)
'e aha, 94, 98, 100, 102, 110, 113
Eel's Hole, 138
'e 'ere, 58
'ehia?, 16
'eti, 66, 80
INDEX

'e i hea, 99
'e'ita, 57
elision, 9
emphatic pronoun, 122
'e nehenehe, 123
enumerations, 16
'e'ore, 57
equality, 26
equational sentence, 74
'e ti'a, 123
'e vai?, 95
every, 27

fa'a-, 49
fanau'a, 13
fatata, 77
feiä, 13
Fishing, 132
Fishing with Stones, 143
Fourteenth of July, The, 139
frequency, 78
from, 80
frustrative, 46(a, x)
future tense, 46(a, ix)
gender, 13
general articles, 11

ha'a-, 49
habitual action, 46(a, viii)
have, 75
hia, 47, 51, 52, 85
hina'aro, 128
ho'i, 129
House-building, 142
how, 112
how?, 101
how many?, 16
hui, 13

'i, 44, 46(a, iv), 47
ia, 54
'ia, 43, 90, 110
'i anafe'a, 100
if, 130
'i hea, 99, 117
ihō, 46(a, v), 122
ihoa, 129
imperatives, 90
imperfect tense, 46(a, ii)
impersonal verbs, 69

in, 80
inability, 123
inafe'a, 100
indirect object, 65
'i ni'a, 80
initial vowels, 6
in order to, 87
intensified verbs, 54
interrogative, 93–102
interrogative non-subject, 95
interrogative subject, 94
intransitive, 63
'i o vai?, 95
'i raro, 80
irregular verbs, 47(iii)

kinship terms, 146
know how to, 124

Lepers' Feast Day, 145
like, 26
location, 80

mā, 13
ma'a, 13
mai, 81–116
maia', 13
mai hea mai, 99
maira, 46(a, i)
mai te, 111
mai te mea e, 130
mai te peu e, 130
manner, 85
many, 72
Market, 127
mea, 73
months of the year, 19
must, 129

na, 12, 46(a, iv), 81
nā, 37, 47, 75
nafe'a, 101, 112
nā muri iho, 84
nana, 13
nā roto, 80
nau, 12
nā vai, 94
necessitative, 129
need to, 129
negative, 56–61, 72, 73, 74
negative interrogative, 93
nei, 46, 81
never, 59
no, 36, 75, 83, 95
no hea, 99
nominalisation, 46(c)
non-verbal sentences, 72–5
normal modifiers, 23
no te aha, 98, 109
no te mea, 88
not yet, 60
noun agents, 47
noun + hia, 52
calculating, 15–17
‘o, 11
‘ō, 36
object, 44
object markers, 44
often, 78
ōni, 13
only, 28
Orange-picking, 140
ordinal numbers, 17
‘ore, 61, 98
‘otānē, 13
ōti, 46(a, vii)
ought, 129
‘ovahine, 13
‘o vai, 94–5
pa'ato’a, 27
pa’e, 13
participial forms, 46(c)
passive verbs, 47
past tense, 46(a, iii–vii)
pauroa, 27
Pearl-shell Diving, 134
pe‘etā, 13
pharyngealisation, 6
pinia, 13
placing of time phrases, 77
possession, 36–40
possessive pronoun, 75
possessive statements, 40
Post Office, 97
present tense, 46(a, i)
pronouns, 42–3
pronoun agents, 47
pronoun objects, 43
pronoun possessors, 37
pronoun subject, 42
pronunciation, 1–9
proper nouns, 11, 44
proper noun possessors, 39
pu‘e, 13
pupapa, 13
purpose, 87
quantity, 13
ra, 46, 81
rahi, 25
raverahi, 72
raverau, 72
recent past tense, 46(a, v)
reciprocal, 121
reflexive, 120
roa, 25, 59
ruru, 13
sex, 13
Shops, 108
since, 77, 116
so that, 87
special articles, 13
special verb fillers, 46(b)
stress, 8
superlative, 25
Sweet Potatoes, 137
syllable, 7
tā-, 50
tā, 36
ta‘ato’a, 27
table of articles, 11
Tahiti, 92
tāne, 13
taua . . . ra, 33	
tau na, 12
taura, 13
te, 11, 46, 94, 105–6
tehia, 95
te ho‘e, 11
tei, 80, 94, 105–6
teie, 30
tei hea, 99
tei reira, 117
telling the time, 20
temauri, 11
temporal expression, 21
tena, 31
tenses, 46
tēra, 32
tēra ra, 133
INDEX

te reira, 34

t e tahi, 11

t e tahi mau, 11

that, 31–4, 115

the, 11

Things to do in Tahiti, 136

this, 30

time, 20, 77

time phrases, 77

tō, 36

t o'ohia?, 16

to whom?, 95

transitive, 64

try, 125

'ua, 46, 73

ufa, 13

unreal condition, 130

useful phrases, 10

vahine, 13

vera, 42

vai, 70

variants, 1

verb, 45–7

verbal sentences, 63–8

vetahi mau, 11

vowels, 2

vowel length, 3

vowel sequences, 4

vowel word initial, 6

want, 128

what, 113

what?, 102

when, 110

when?, 100

where, 117

where?, 99

where from?, 99

where to?, 99

whether, 114

which?, 94

while, 111

who, 105

who?, 94

whom, 106

whom?, 95

whose?, 95

why, 109

why?, 98

with, 84

without, 61

young of animals, 13